



## **Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Integrated Management Controller GUI Configuration Guide, Release 1.4**

**First Published:** September 06, 2011

**Last Modified:** August 14, 2012

### **Americas Headquarters**

Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
<http://www.cisco.com>  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883

Text Part Number: OL-23489-08

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks>. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1110R)

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses. Any examples, command display output, and figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

© 2009-2012 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



## CONTENTS

---

### Preface

#### Preface xi

Audience xi

Conventions xi

New and Changed Information for this Release xii

Related Cisco UCS Documentation xv

---

### CHAPTER 1

#### Overview 1

Overview of the Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers 1

Overview of the Server Software 1

Cisco Integrated Management Controller 2

Overview of the CIMC User Interface 3

CIMC Home Page 4

Navigation and Work Panes 4

Toolbar 6

Cisco Integrated Management Controller Online Help Overview 6

Logging In to CIMC 6

Logging Out of CIMC 7

---

### CHAPTER 2

#### Installing the Server OS 9

OS Installation Methods 9

KVM Console 9

Installing an OS Using the KVM Console 10

PXE Installation Servers 11

Installing an OS Using a PXE Installation Server 11

---

### CHAPTER 3

#### Managing the Server 13

Viewing Overall Server Status 13

Toggling the Locator LED	15
Toggling the Locator LED for a Hard Drive	16
Managing the Server Boot Order	16
Server Boot Order	16
Configuring the Server Boot Order	16
Viewing the Actual Server Boot Order	18
Resetting the Server	18
Shutting Down the Server	19
Managing Server Power	19
Powering On the Server	19
Powering Off the Server	20
Power Cycling the Server	20
Configuring Power Policies	21
Viewing the Power Statistics	21
Power Capping Policy	21
Configuring the Power Capping Policy	21
Configuring the Power Restore Policy	22
Managing the Flexible Flash Controller	23
Cisco Flexible Flash	23
Configuring the Flexible Flash Controller Properties	24
Bootting from the Flexible Flash	25
Resetting the Flexible Flash Controller	26
Configuring BIOS Settings	26
Configuring Main BIOS Settings	26
Configuring Advanced BIOS Settings	28
Configuring Server Management BIOS Settings	29

---

**CHAPTER 4**

<b>Viewing Server Properties</b>	<b>31</b>
Viewing Server Properties	31
Viewing CIMC Information	32
Viewing CPU Properties	33
Viewing Memory Properties	33
Viewing Power Supply Properties	35
Viewing Storage Properties	36
Viewing PCI Adapter Properties	37

---

**CHAPTER 5****Viewing Server Sensors 39**

- Viewing the Fault Summary 39
- Viewing Power Supply Sensors 40
- Viewing Fan Sensors 42
- Viewing Temperature Sensors 43
- Viewing Voltage Sensors 44
- Viewing Current Sensors 45
- Viewing LED Sensors 46
- Viewing Storage Sensors 46

---

**CHAPTER 6****Managing Remote Presence 49**

- Configuring Serial Over LAN 49
- Configuring Virtual Media 50
- KVM Console 51
- Configuring the Virtual KVM 52
  - Enabling the Virtual KVM 53
  - Disabling the Virtual KVM 53

---

**CHAPTER 7****Managing User Accounts 55**

- Configuring Local Users 55
- Active Directory 56
  - Configuring the Active Directory Server 56
  - Configuring Active Directory in CIMC 58
- Viewing User Sessions 60

---

**CHAPTER 8****Configuring Network-Related Settings 61**

- Server NIC Configuration 61
  - Server NICs 61
  - Configuring Server NICs 62
- Configuring Common Properties 64
- Configuring IPv4 64
- Connecting to a VLAN 65
- Connecting to a Port Profile 66
- Network Security Configuration 66

Network Security	66
Configuring Network Security	67

## CHAPTER 9

### Managing Network Adapters 69

Overview of the Cisco UCS C-Series Network Adapters	69
Viewing Network Adapter Properties	70
Configuring Adapter Properties	73
Managing vHBAs	75
Guidelines for Managing vHBAs	75
Viewing vHBA Properties	75
Modifying vHBA Properties	79
Creating a vHBA	84
Deleting a vHBA	85
vHBA Boot Table	85
Creating a Boot Table Entry	85
Deleting a Boot Table Entry	86
vHBA Persistent Binding	86
Viewing Persistent Bindings	87
Rebuilding Persistent Bindings	88
Managing vNICs	88
Guidelines for Managing vNICs	88
Viewing vNIC Properties	89
Modifying vNIC Properties	93
Creating a vNIC	98
Deleting a vNIC	99
Managing VM FEX	99
Virtual Machine Fabric Extender	99
Viewing Virtual FEX Properties	99
Backing Up and Restoring the Adapter Configuration	103
Exporting the Adapter Configuration	103
Importing the Adapter Configuration	104
Restoring Adapter Defaults	104
Managing Adapter Firmware	105
Adapter Firmware	105
Installing Adapter Firmware From a Local File	105

Installing Adapter Firmware From a TFTP Server	106
Activating Adapter Firmware	107
Resetting the Adapter	107

---

## CHAPTER 10

### Configuring Communication Services 109

Configuring HTTP	109
Configuring SSH	110
Configuring XML API	111
XML API for CIMC	111
Enabling the XML API	111
Configuring IPMI	112
IPMI Over LAN	112
Configuring IPMI over LAN	112
Configuring SNMP	113
SNMP	113
Configuring SNMP Properties	113
Configuring SNMP Trap Settings	114
Sending a Test SNMP Trap Message	116
Managing SNMPv3 Users	116
Configuring SNMPv3 Users	117

---

## CHAPTER 11

### Managing Certificates 119

Managing the Server Certificate	119
Generating a Certificate Signing Request	119
Creating a Self-Signed Certificate	120
Uploading a Server Certificate	122

---

## CHAPTER 12

### Configuring Platform Event Filters 125

Platform Event Filters	125
Enabling Platform Event Alerts	125
Disabling Platform Event Alerts	126
Configuring Platform Event Filters	126
Configuring SNMP Trap Settings	127
Sending a Test SNMP Trap Message	128
Interpreting Platform Event Traps	129

---

**CHAPTER 13****CIMC Firmware Management 133**

- Overview of Firmware 133
- Obtaining Firmware from Cisco 134
- Installing CIMC Firmware from a TFTP Server 135
- Installing CIMC Firmware Through the Browser 136
- Activating Installed CIMC Firmware 137
- Installing BIOS Firmware from a TFTP Server 137
- Installing BIOS Firmware Through the Browser 139

---

**CHAPTER 14****Viewing Logs 141**

- CIMC Log 141
  - Viewing the CIMC Log 141
  - Clearing the CIMC Log 142
  - Configuring the CIMC Log Threshold 143
  - Sending the CIMC Log to a Remote Server 143
- System Event Log 145
  - Viewing the System Event Log 145
  - Clearing the System Event Log 145

---

**CHAPTER 15****Server Utilities 147**

- Exporting Technical Support Data 147
  - Exporting Technical Support Data to TFTP 147
  - Downloading Technical Support Data to a Local File 148
- Rebooting CIMC 149
- Recovering from a Corrupted BIOS 150
- Resetting CIMC to Factory Defaults 150
- Exporting and Importing the CIMC Configuration 151
  - Exporting and Importing the CIMC Configuration 151
  - Exporting the CIMC Configuration 151
  - Importing a CIMC Configuration 152

---

**APPENDIX A****BIOS Parameters by Server Model 155**

- C22 and C24 Servers 155
  - Main BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers 155



Advanced BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers	156
Server Management BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers	167
C200 and C210 Servers	170
Main BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers	170
Advanced BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers	171
Server Management BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers	180
C220 and C240 Servers	183
Main BIOS Parameters for C220 and C240 Servers	183
Advanced BIOS Parameters for C220 and C240 Servers	183
Server Management BIOS Parameters for C220 and C240 Servers	195
C250 Servers	198
Main BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers	198
Advanced BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers	199
Server Management BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers	208
C260 Servers	211
Main BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers	211
Advanced BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers	211
Server Management BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers	220
C460 Servers	222
Main BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers	222
Advanced BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers	223
Server Management BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers	232





## Preface

---

This preface includes the following sections:

- [Audience, page xi](#)
- [Conventions, page xi](#)
- [New and Changed Information for this Release, page xii](#)
- [Related Cisco UCS Documentation, page xv](#)

## Audience

This guide is intended primarily for data center administrators with responsibilities and expertise in one or more of the following:

- Server administration
- Storage administration
- Network administration
- Network security

## Conventions

This document uses the following conventions:

Convention	Indication
<b>bold font</b>	Commands, keywords, GUI elements, and user-entered text appear in <b>bold font</b> .
<i>italic font</i>	Document titles, new or emphasized terms, and arguments for which you supply values are in <i>italic font</i> .
<code>courierfont</code>	Terminal sessions and information that the system displays appear in <code>courier font</code> .

Convention	Indication
[ ]	Elements in square brackets are optional.
{x   y   z}	Required alternative keywords are grouped in braces and separated by vertical bars.
[x   y   z]	Optional alternative keywords are grouped in brackets and separated by vertical bars.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.
< >	Nonprinting characters such as passwords are in angle brackets.
[ ]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

**Note**

Means *reader take note*.

**Tip**

Means *the following information will help you solve a problem*.

**Caution**

Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might perform an action that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

**Timesaver**

Means *the described action saves time*. You can save time by performing the action described in the paragraph.

**Warning**

Means *reader be warned*. In this situation, you might perform an action that could result in bodily injury.

## New and Changed Information for this Release

The following tables provide an overview of the significant changes to this guide for the current release. The tables do not provide an exhaustive list of all changes made to the configuration guides or of the new features in this release.

For a complete list of all C-Series documentation, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* available at the following URL: <http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc>.

### **New Features and Significant Behavioral Changes in Cisco Integrated Management Controller software, Release 1.4(6)**

#### [Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4\(6\)](#)

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card	Support added for the Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card.	<a href="#">Managing Network Adapters, on page 69</a>
BIOS Properties	Support for additional BIOS properties for the Cisco UCS C22 M3 Server, Cisco UCS C24 M3 Server, Cisco UCS C220 M3 Server, and the Cisco UCS C240 M3 Server.	<a href="#">BIOS Parameters by Server Model, on page 155</a>

### **New Features and Significant Behavioral Changes in Cisco Integrated Management Controller software, Release 1.4(5)**

#### [Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4\(5\)](#)

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Hard Disk Drive LED	Support added for toggling the LED on an installed hard disk drive.	<a href="#">Managing the Server, on page 13</a>
BIOS Properties	Support for additional BIOS properties for the Cisco UCS C220 M3 Server and the Cisco UCS C240 M3 Server.	<a href="#">BIOS Parameters by Server Model, on page 155</a>

### **New Features and Significant Behavioral Changes in Cisco Integrated Management Controller software, Release 1.4(4)**

#### [Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4\(4\)](#)

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Platform support	The features available in Release 1.4(3) are now available on the Cisco UCS C220 M3 Server and the Cisco UCS C240 M3 Server.	<a href="#">Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4(4)</a>
BIOS Properties	Support for additional BIOS properties for the Cisco UCS C220 M3 Server and the Cisco UCS C240 M3 Server.	<a href="#">BIOS Parameters by Server Model, on page 155</a>

## New Features and Significant Behavioral Changes in Cisco Integrated Management Controller software, Release 1.4(3)

[Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4\(3\)](#)

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Integration with Cisco UCS Manager	The supported servers can be integrated into a Cisco UCS domain.	See the <i>Hardware Installation Guide</i> (HIG) for the type of server you are using. The C-Series HIGs are available at the following URL: <a href="http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/prod_installation_guides_list.html">http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/prod_installation_guides_list.html</a>
Technical support	Support added for downloading the tech support information file from a browser.	<a href="#">Server Utilities</a> , on page 147
BIOS parameters	Support added for additional BIOS properties.	<a href="#">BIOS Parameters by Server Model</a> , on page 155

## New Features and Significant Behavioral Changes in Cisco Integrated Management Controller software, Release 1.4(2)

[Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4\(2\)](#)

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Platform support	The features available in Release 1.4(1) are now available on the Cisco UCS C460 M2 Server and the Cisco UCS C260 M2 Server.	<a href="#">Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4(2)</a>
BIOS parameters	Support added for additional BIOS properties.	<a href="#">BIOS Parameters by Server Model</a> , on page 155

## New Features and Significant Behavioral Changes in Cisco Integrated Management Controller software, Release 1.4(1)

[Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4\(1\)](#)

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Platform support	The features in this release apply to the Cisco UCS C200 M1 Server, the Cisco UCS C210 M1 Server, and the Cisco UCS C250 M1 Server.	<a href="#">Release Notes for Cisco UCS C-Series Software, Release 1.4(1)</a>

Feature	Description	Where Documented
VM FEX	Support is added for virtual machine fabric extenders (VM FEX).	<a href="#">Managing Network Adapters, on page 69</a>
Create vHBAs	Support added in the CLI to create up to 16 vHBAs.	<a href="#">Managing Network Adapters, on page 69</a>
Active Directory groups	Support added for Active Directory authorization groups.	<a href="#">Managing User Accounts, on page 55</a>
Enhanced SNMP features	Enhanced SNMPv3 and SNMP trap configuration is relocated in the user interface.	<a href="#">Configuring Communication Services, on page 109</a>
XML API	Support added for CIMC control by an XML API.	<a href="#">Configuring Communication Services, on page 109</a>
HTTP redirect	Support added for redirection of HTTP requests to HTTPS.	<a href="#">Configuring Communication Services, on page 109</a>
BIOS parameters	Support added for additional BIOS properties.	<a href="#">BIOS Parameters by Server Model, on page 155</a>

## Related Cisco UCS Documentation

### Documentation Roadmaps

For a complete list of all B-Series documentation, see the *Cisco UCS B-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* available at the following URL: <http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/b-series-doc>.

For a complete list of all C-Series documentation, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* available at the following URL: <http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc>.

### Other Documentation Resources

An ISO file containing all B and C-Series documents is available at the following URL: <http://www.cisco.com/cisco/software/type.html?mdfid=283853163&flowid=25821>. From this page, click **Unified Computing System (UCS) Documentation Roadmap Bundle**.

The ISO file is updated after every major documentation release.

Follow [Cisco UCS Docs on Twitter](#) to receive document update notifications.







# CHAPTER 1

## Overview

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers, page 1](#)
- [Overview of the Server Software, page 1](#)
- [Cisco Integrated Management Controller, page 2](#)
- [Overview of the CIMC User Interface, page 3](#)

## Overview of the Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers

The Cisco UCS C-Series rack-mount servers include the following models:

- Cisco UCS C200 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C210 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C220 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C240 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C250 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C260 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C460 Rack-Mount Server



### Note

To determine which Cisco UCS C-Series rack-mount servers are supported by this firmware release, see the associated *Release Notes*. The C-Series release notes are available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10739/prod\\_release\\_notes\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10739/prod_release_notes_list.html)

## Overview of the Server Software

The Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Server ships with two major software systems installed.

### CIMC Firmware

CIMC is a separate management module built into the motherboard. A dedicated ARM-based processor, separate from the main server CPU, runs the CIMC firmware. The system ships with a running version of the CIMC firmware. You can update the CIMC firmware, but no initial installation is needed.

### Server OS

The main server CPU runs an OS such as Windows or Linux. The server ships with a pre-installed OS, but you can install a different OS using the DVD drive or over the network. You can use CIMC to install the new OS using the KVM console and vMedia.

**Note**

You can access the available OS installation documentation from the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at <http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc>.

## Cisco Integrated Management Controller

The CIMC is the management service for the C-Series servers. CIMC runs within the server.

**Note**

The CIMC management service is used only when the server is operating in Standalone Mode. If your C-Series server is integrated into a UCS system, you must manage it using UCS Manager. For information about using UCS Manager, see the configuration guides listed in the *Cisco UCS B-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at <http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/b-series-doc>.

### Management Interfaces

You can use a web-based GUI or SSH-based CLI to access, configure, administer, and monitor the server. Almost all tasks can be performed in either interface, and the results of tasks performed in one interface are displayed in another. However, you cannot do the following:

- Use CIMC GUI to invoke CIMC CLI
- View a command that has been invoked through CIMC CLI in CIMC GUI
- Generate CIMC CLI output from CIMC GUI

### Tasks You Can Perform in CIMC

You can use CIMC to perform the following server management tasks:

- Power on, power off, power cycle, reset and shut down the server
- Toggle the locator LED
- Configure the server boot order
- View server properties and sensors
- Manage remote presence

- Create and manage local user accounts, and enable remote user authentication through Active Directory
- Configure network-related settings, including NIC properties, IPv4, VLANs, and network security
- Configure communication services, including HTTP, SSH, and IPMI Over LAN
- Manage certificates
- Configure platform event filters
- Update CIMC firmware
- Monitor faults, alarms, and server status

### No Operating System or Application Provisioning or Management

CIMC provisions servers, and as a result, exists below the operating system on a server. Therefore, you cannot use it to provision or manage operating systems or applications on servers. For example, you cannot do the following:

- Deploy an OS, such as Windows or Linux
- Deploy patches for software, such as an OS or an application
- Install base software components, such as anti-virus software, monitoring agents, or backup clients
- Install software applications, such as databases, application server software, or web servers
- Perform operator actions, including restarting an Oracle database, restarting printer queues, or handling non-CIMC user accounts
- Configure or manage external storage on the SAN or NAS storage

## Overview of the CIMC User Interface

The CIMC user interface is a web-based management interface for Cisco C-Series servers. You can launch the CIMC user interface and manage the server from any remote host that meets the following minimum requirements:

- Java 1.6 or later
- HTTP and HTTPS enabled
- Adobe Flash Player 10 or later

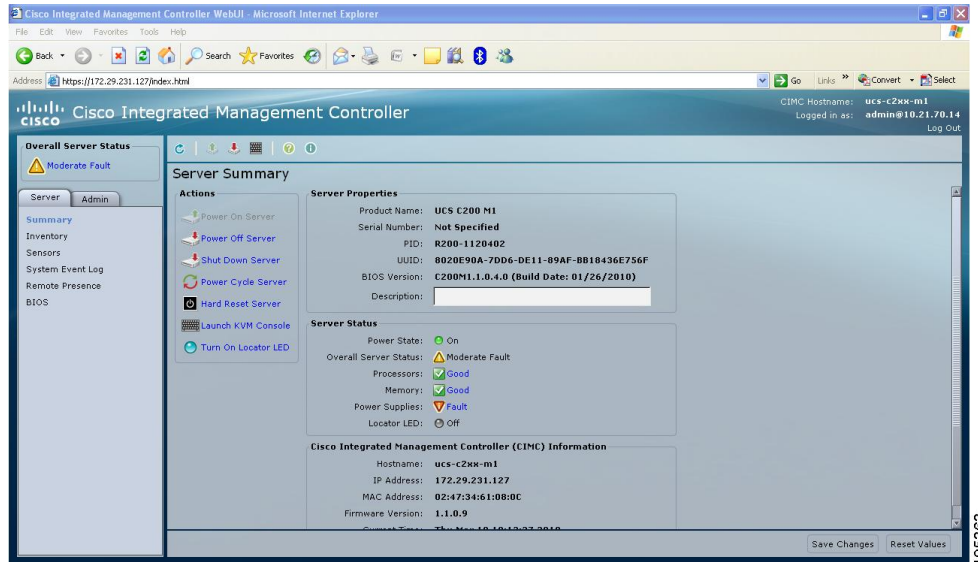


#### Note

In case you lose or forget the password that you use to log in to CIMC, see the password recovery instructions in the Cisco UCS C-Series server installation and service guide for your server. This guide is available from the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at <http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc>.

## CIMC Home Page

When you first log into CIMC GUI, the user interface looks similar to the following illustration:



## Navigation and Work Panes

The **Navigation** pane displays on the left side of the CIMC GUI. Clicking links on the **Server** or **Admin** tabs in the **Navigation** pane displays the associated tabs in the **Work** pane on the right.

The **Navigation** pane has the following areas:

- Overall Server Status area
- Server tab
- Admin tab

### Overall Server Status Area

The **Overall Server Status** area is above the **Server** and **Admin** tabs. Click the link in area to refresh the **Server Summary** tab in the **Work** pane.



#### Note

If a different tab is displayed in the **Work** pane, clicking this link redisplay the **Server Summary** tab with updated server information.

### Server Tab

Each node in the **Server** tab leads to one or more tabs that display in the **Work** pane. These tabs provides access to the following information:

Server Tab Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
<b>Summary</b>	Server properties, status, BIOS version, CIMC firmware version, IP address, and MAC address.
<b>Inventory</b>	Installed CPUs, memory cards, power supplies, network adapters, storage cards, and PCI adapters.
<b>Sensors</b>	Power supply, fan, temperature, voltage, current, LEDs, and storage sensor readings.
<b>System Event Log</b>	System event messages.
<b>Remote Presence</b>	KVM, virtual media, and Serial over LAN settings.
<b>BIOS</b>	The installed BIOS firmware version and the server boot order.
<b>Power Policies</b>	Power policy settings.
<b>Fault Summary</b>	Fault sensor readings.

### Admin Tab

Each node in the **Admin** tab leads to one or more tabs that display in the **Work** pane. These tabs provides access to the following information:

Admin Tab Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
<b>User Management</b>	Locally-defined user accounts, Active Directory settings, and current user session information.
<b>Network</b>	NIC, IPv4, VLAN, and LOM properties, along with network security settings.
<b>Communication Services</b>	HTTP, SSH, XML API, IPMI over LAN, and SNMP settings.
<b>Certificate Management</b>	Security certificate information and management.
<b>CIMC Log</b>	CIMC messages.
<b>Event Management</b>	Platform event filters.
<b>Firmware Management</b>	CIMC and BIOS firmware information and management.
<b>Utilities</b>	Technical support data collection, system configuration import and export options, and restore factory defaults settings.

## Toolbar

The toolbar displays above the **Work** pane.

Button Name	Description
<b>Refresh</b>	Refreshes the current page.
<b>Power On Server</b>	Powers on the server.
<b>Power Off Server</b>	Powers off the server.
<b>Launch KVM Console</b>	Launches the KVM console.
<b>Help</b>	Displays the online help for the tab displayed in the <b>Work</b> pane.
<b>Info</b>	Displays CIMC information.

## Cisco Integrated Management Controller Online Help Overview

The GUI for the Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) software is divided into two main sections, a **Navigation** pane on the left and a **Work** pane on the right.

This help system describes the fields on each CIMC GUI page and in each dialog box.

To access the page help, do one of the following:

- In a particular tab in the CIMC GUI, click the **Help** icon in the toolbar above the **Work** pane.
- In a dialog box, click the **Help** button in that dialog box.



### Note

For a complete list of all C-Series documentation, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* available at the following URL: <http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc>.

## Logging In to CIMC

### Before You Begin

If not installed, install Adobe Flash Player 10 or later on your local machine.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In your web browser, type or select the web link for CIMC.
- Step 2** If a security dialog box displays, do the following:
- a) (Optional) Check the check box to accept all content from Cisco.
  - b) Click **Yes** to accept the certificate and continue.
- Step 3** In the log in window, enter your username and password.
- Tip** When logging in for the first time to an unconfigured system, use **admin** as the username and **password** as the password.
- Step 4** Click **Log In**.
- 

## Logging Out of CIMC

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the upper right of CIMC, click **Log Out**.  
Logging out returns you to the CIMC log in page.
- Step 2** (Optional) Log back in or close your web browser.
-







## CHAPTER 2

# Installing the Server OS

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [OS Installation Methods, page 9](#)
- [KVM Console, page 9](#)
- [PXE Installation Servers, page 11](#)

## OS Installation Methods

C-Series servers support several operating systems. Regardless of the OS being installed, you can install it on your server using one of the following tools:

- KVM console
- PXE installation server

## KVM Console

The KVM console is an interface accessible from CIMC that emulates a direct keyboard, video, and mouse (KVM) connection to the server. The KVM console allows you to connect to the server from a remote location.

Instead of using CD/DVD or floppy drives physically connected to the server, the KVM console uses virtual media, which are actual disk drives or disk image files that are mapped to virtual CD/DVD or floppy drives. You can map any of the following to a virtual drive:

- CD/DVD or floppy drive on your computer
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on your computer
- USB flash drive on your computer
- CD/DVD or floppy drive on the network
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on the network
- USB flash drive on the network

You can use the KVM console to install an OS on the server.

**Note**

When launching the KVM Console from Internet Explorer 6 SP1 on Windows Server 2003, the browser will report that it cannot download a required file. If this occurs, click the browser Tools menu and select Internet Options. Click the Advanced tab and, in the Security section, uncheck the checkbox for "Do not save encrypted pages to disk." Launch the KVM Console again.

## Installing an OS Using the KVM Console

**Note**

This procedure describes only the basic installation steps. Detailed guides for installing Linux, VMware, and Windows can be found at this URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products\\_installation\\_and\\_configuration\\_guides\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products_installation_and_configuration_guides_list.html).

### Before You Begin

- Locate the OS installation disk or disk image file.
- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to install an OS.

### Procedure

- Step 1** Load the OS installation disk into your CD/DVD drive, or copy the disk image files to your computer.
- Step 2** If CIMC is not open, log in.
- Step 3** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 4** On the **Server** tab, click **Remote Presence**.
- Step 5** In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area, click **Launch KVM Console**.  
The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 7** From the KVM console, click the **VM** tab.
- Step 8** In the **VM** tab, map the virtual media using either of the following methods:
  - Check the **Mapped** check box for the CD/DVD drive containing the OS installation disk.
  - Click **Add Image**, navigate to and select the OS installation disk image, click **Open** to mount the disk image, and then check the **Mapped** check box for the mounted disk image.
- Note** You must keep the **VM** tab open during the OS installation process. Closing the tab unmaps all virtual media.
- Step 9** Reboot the server and select the virtual CD/DVD drive as the boot device.  
When the server reboots, it begins the installation process from the virtual CD/DVD drive. Refer to the installation guide for the OS being installed to guide you through the rest of the installation process.

### What to Do Next

After the OS installation is complete, reset the virtual media boot order to its original setting.

## PXE Installation Servers

A Preboot Execution Environment (PXE) installation server allows a client to boot and install an OS from a remote location. To use this method, a PXE environment must be configured and available on your VLAN, typically a dedicated provisioning VLAN. Additionally, the server must be set to boot from the network. When the server boots, it sends a PXE request across the network. The PXE installation server acknowledges the request, and starts a sequence of events that installs the OS on the server.

PXE servers can use installation disks, disk images, or scripts to install an OS. Proprietary disk images can also be used to install an OS, additional components, or applications.

**Note**

PXE installation is an efficient method for installing an OS on a large number of servers. However, considering that this method requires setting up a PXE environment, it might be easier to use another installation method.

## Installing an OS Using a PXE Installation Server

### Before You Begin

- Verify that the server can be reached over a VLAN.
- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to install an OS.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Set the boot order to **PXE** first.

**Step 2** Reboot the server.

If a PXE install server is available on the VLAN, the installation process begins when the server reboots. PXE installations are typically automated and require no additional user input. Refer to the installation guide for the OS being installed to guide you through the rest of the installation process.

### What to Do Next

After the OS installation is complete, reset the LAN boot order to its original setting.





## CHAPTER 3

# Managing the Server

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Viewing Overall Server Status, page 13](#)
- [Toggling the Locator LED, page 15](#)
- [Toggling the Locator LED for a Hard Drive, page 16](#)
- [Managing the Server Boot Order, page 16](#)
- [Resetting the Server, page 18](#)
- [Shutting Down the Server, page 19](#)
- [Managing Server Power, page 19](#)
- [Configuring Power Policies, page 21](#)
- [Managing the Flexible Flash Controller, page 23](#)
- [Configuring BIOS Settings, page 26](#)

## Viewing Overall Server Status

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Overall Server Status** area of the **Navigation** pane, click the blue health report link to refresh the **Server Summary** pane.
- Step 2** (Optional) Review the following information in the **Server Status** area of the **Server Summary** pane:
- Note** The following list shows all possible status fields. The actual fields displayed depend on the type of C-Series server that you are using.

Name	Description
<b>Power State</b> field	The current power state.

Name	Description
<b>Overall Server Status</b> field	<p>The overall status of the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Memory Test In Progress</b>—The server is performing a self-test of the installed memory. This condition normally occurs during the boot process.</li> <li>• <b>Good</b></li> <li>• <b>Moderate Fault</b></li> <li>• <b>Severe Fault</b></li> </ul>
<b>Temperature</b> field	<p>The temperature status. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Good</b></li> <li>• <b>Fault</b></li> <li>• <b>Severe Fault</b></li> </ul> <p>You can click the link in this field to view more temperature information.</p>
<b>Processors</b> field	<p>The overall status of the processors. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Good</b></li> <li>• <b>Fault</b></li> </ul> <p>You can click the link in this field to view more information about the processors.</p>
<b>Memory</b> field	<p>The overall status of the memory modules. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Good</b></li> <li>• <b>Fault</b></li> <li>• <b>Severe Fault</b></li> </ul> <p>You can click the link in this field to view detailed status information.</p>
<b>Power Supplies</b> field	<p>The overall status of the power supplies. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Good</b></li> <li>• <b>Fault</b></li> <li>• <b>Severe Fault</b></li> </ul> <p>You can click the link in this field to view detailed status information.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Fans</b> field	The overall status of the power supplies. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Good</b></li><li>• <b>Fault</b></li><li>• <b>Severe Fault</b></li></ul> You can click the link in this field to view detailed status information.
<b>HDD</b> field	The overall status of the hard drives. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Good</b></li><li>• <b>Fault</b></li></ul> You can click the link in this field to view detailed status information.
<b>Locator LED</b> field	Whether the locator LEDs are on or off.

## Toggling the Locator LED

### Before You Begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Turn On Locator LED**.  
The LED indicator in the **Locator LED** field lights up and the physical locator LED on the server turns on and blinks.
- Step 4** In the **Actions** area, click **Turn Off Locator LED**.  
The locator LED turns off.

# Toggling the Locator LED for a Hard Drive

## Before You Begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

## Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.
  - Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Storage** table, find the hard disk drive (HDD) whose locator LED you want to change.
  - Step 5** In the **LED Status** column for that HDD, select the desired locator LED state from the drop-down list. If you select **Turn On**, the LED status indicator in this column lights up and the physical locator LED on the associated HDD turns on and blinks.
- 

# Managing the Server Boot Order

## Server Boot Order

Using CIMC, you can configure the order in which the server attempts to boot from available boot device types.

When you change the boot order configuration, CIMC sends the configured boot order to the BIOS the next time the server is rebooted. To implement the new boot order, reboot the server after making the configuration change. The new boot order will take effect on any subsequent reboot. The configured boot order is not sent again until the configuration is changed again.



### Note

The actual boot order will differ from the configured boot order if either of the following conditions occur:

- The BIOS encounters issues while trying to boot using the configured boot order.
  - A user changes the boot order directly through the BIOS.
- 

# Configuring the Server Boot Order

## Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure server boot order.



## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.  
The BIOS page appears.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Configure Boot Order**.  
A dialog box with boot order instructions appears.
- Step 4** Review the instructions, and then click **OK**.  
The **Configure Boot Order** dialog box displays.
- Step 5** In the **Configure Boot Order** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Device Types</b> table	The server boot options. You can select one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HDD</b>—Hard disk drive</li> <li>• <b>FDD</b>—Floppy disk drive</li> <li>• <b>CDROM</b>—Bootable CD-ROM or DVD</li> <li>• <b>PXE</b>—PXE boot</li> <li>• <b>EFI</b>—Extensible Firmware Interface</li> </ul>
<b>Add &gt;</b>	Moves the selected device type to the <b>Boot Order</b> table.
<b>&lt; Remove</b>	Removes the selected device type from the <b>Boot Order</b> table.
<b>Boot Order</b> table	Displays the device types from which this server can boot, in the order in which the boot will be attempted.
<b>Up</b>	Moves the selected device type to a higher priority in the <b>Boot Order</b> table.
<b>Down</b>	Moves the selected device type to a lower priority in the <b>Boot Order</b> table.
<b>Apply</b> button	Saves the changes to the configured boot order or reapplies a previously configured boot order.  CIMC sends the configured boot order to the BIOS the next time the server is rebooted.
<b>Cancel</b> button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes or reappling the existing configuration.  If you select this option, the actual boot order will not be changed the next time the server is rebooted.

- Step 6** Click **Apply**.  
Additional device types may be appended to the actual boot order, depending on what devices you have connected to your server.
- 

### What to Do Next

Reboot the server to boot with your new boot order.

## Viewing the Actual Server Boot Order

The actual server boot order is the boot order actually used by the BIOS when the server last booted. The actual boot order can differ from the boot order configured in CIMC.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.  
The **BIOS** page appears.
- Step 3** In the **Actual Boot Order** area of the **BIOS** page, review the list of boot devices in the order actually used by the BIOS when the server last booted.  
If multiple instances of a device type were present during the last boot, you can expand the device type to see those devices.
- 

## Resetting the Server

### Before You Begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Hard Reset Server**.  
A dialog box with the message **Hard Reset the Server?** appears.
- Step 4** Click **OK**.
-

# Shutting Down the Server

## Before You Begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

## Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
  - Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Shut Down Server**.  
A dialog box with the message **Shut Down the Server?** appears.
  - Step 4** Click **OK**.
- 

# Managing Server Power

## Powering On the Server



### Note

If the server was powered off by any means other than through CIMC, it will not become active immediately when powered on. The server will remain in standby mode until CIMC completes initialization.

## Before You Begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

## Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
  - Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Power On Server**.  
A dialog box with the message **Power on the server?** appears.
  - Step 4** Click **OK**.
-

## Powering Off the Server

### Before You Begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Power Off Server**.  
A dialog box with the message **Power Off the Server?** appears.
- Step 4** Click **OK**.
- 

## Power Cycling the Server

### Before You Begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Power Cycle Server**.  
A dialog box with the message **Power Cycle the Server?** appears.
- Step 4** Click **OK**.
-

# Configuring Power Policies

## Viewing the Power Statistics

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Power Policies**.
- Step 3** In the **Power Statistics** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Current Consumption</b> field	The power currently being used by the server, in watts.
<b>Maximum Consumption</b> field	The maximum number of watts consumed by the server since the last time it was rebooted.
<b>Minimum Consumption</b> field	The minimum number of watts consumed by the server since the last time it was rebooted.
<b>Minimum Configurable Limit</b> field	The minimum amount of power that can be specified as the peak power cap for this server, in watts.
<b>Maximum Configurable Limit</b> field	The maximum amount of power that can be specified as the peak power cap for this server, in watts.

## Power Capping Policy

The power capping policy determines how server power consumption is actively managed. When power capping is enabled, the system monitors how much power is allocated to the server and attempts to keep the power consumption below the allocated power. If the server exceeds its maximum allotment, the power capping policy triggers the specified non-compliance action.

## Configuring the Power Capping Policy



### Note

This feature is not available on some servers.

**Before You Begin**

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Power Policies**.

**Step 3** In the **Power Configuration** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enable Power Capping</b> check box	fieldIf this box is checked, the system monitors how much power is allocated to the server and takes the specified action if the server goes over its maximum allotment.
<b>Peak Power</b> field	The maximum number of watts that can be allocated to this server. If the server requests more power than specified in this field, the system takes the action defined in the <b>Non-Compliance Action</b> field.  Enter a number of watts within the range defined by the <b>Minimum Configurable Limit</b> field and the <b>Maximum Configurable Limit</b> field.
<b>Non-Compliance Action</b> drop-down list	The action the system should take if power capping is enabled and the server requests more than its peak power allotment. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Force Power Reduction</b>—The server is forced to reduce its power consumption by any means necessary. This option is available only on some C-Series servers.</li> <li>• <b>None</b>—No action is taken and the server is allowed to use more power than specified in the <b>Peak Power</b> field.</li> <li>• <b>Power Off Host</b>—The server is shut down.</li> <li>• <b>Throttle</b>—Processes running on the server are throttled to bring the total power consumption down.</li> </ul>

**Step 4** Click **Save Changes**.

## Configuring the Power Restore Policy

The power restore policy determines how power is restored to the server after a chassis power loss.

**Before You Begin**

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Power Policies**.
- Step 3** In the **Power Restore Policy** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Power Restore Policy</b> drop-down list	The action to be taken when chassis power is restored after an unexpected power loss. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Power Off</b>—The server remains off until it is manually restarted.</li> <li>• <b>Power On</b>—The server is allowed to boot up normally when power is restored. The server can restart immediately or, optionally, after a fixed or random delay.</li> <li>• <b>Restore Last State</b>—The server restarts and the system attempts to restore any processes that were running before power was lost.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Delay Type</b> drop-down list	If the selected policy is <b>Power On</b> , the restart can be delayed with this option. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>fixed</b>—The server restarts after a fixed delay.</li> <li>• <b>random</b>—The server restarts after a random delay.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Delay Value</b> field	If a fixed delay is selected, once chassis power is restored and the CIMC has finished rebooting, the system waits for the specified number of seconds before restarting the server.  Enter an integer between 0 and 240.

- Step 4** Click **Save Changes**.

# Managing the Flexible Flash Controller

## Cisco Flexible Flash

Some C-Series Rack-Mount Servers support an internal Secure Digital (SD) memory card for storage of server software tools and utilities. The SD card is hosted by the Cisco Flexible Flash storage adapter.

The SD storage is available to CIMC as four virtual USB drives. Three are preloaded with Cisco software and the fourth can hold a user-installed hypervisor or other content. The four virtual drives are as follows:

- Cisco UCS Server Configuration Utility (bootable)

- User-installed (may be bootable)
- Cisco drivers (not bootable)
- Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (bootable)

For information about the Cisco software utilities and packages, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at this URL:

<http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc>

## Configuring the Flexible Flash Controller Properties

### Before You Begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Storage Adapters** table, click the FlexFlash controller.  
The properties of the selected FlexFlash controller appear in the tabbed menu below the **Storage Adapters** area.
- Step 5** In the **Storage Card** tabbed menu, click the **Controller Info** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area, click **Configure Operational Profile**.  
The **Operational Profile** dialog box opens.
- Step 7** In the **Operational Profile** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Controller field</b>	The system-defined name of the selected Cisco Flexible Flash controller. This name cannot be changed.
<b>Virtual Drives Enabled field</b>	The virtual drives that can be made available to the server as a USB-style drive. Check the box next to each virtual drive you want the server to access. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SCU</b>—The server can access the Cisco UCS Server Configuration Utility.</li> <li>• <b>Drivers</b>—The server can access the Cisco drivers.</li> <li>• <b>HV</b>—The server can access a user-installed hypervisor.</li> <li>• <b>HUU</b>—The server can access the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility.</li> </ul>



Name	Description
<b>RAID Primary Member</b> field	The slot in which the primary RAID member resides.  <b>Important</b> Currently, Cisco Flexible Flash cards are only supported in slot 1. Therefore, this field must be set to slot1.
<b>Error Count Threshold</b> field	The number of read/write errors that are permitted while accessing the Cisco Flexible Flash card. If the number of errors exceeds this threshold, the Cisco FlexFlash card is disabled.  To specify a read/write error threshold, enter an integer between 1 and 255. To specify that the card should never be disabled regardless of the number of errors encountered, enter 0 (zero).

**Step 8** Click **Save Changes**.

## Booting from the Flexible Flash

You can specify a bootable virtual drive on the Cisco Flexible Flash card that will override the default boot priority the next time the server is restarted, regardless of the default boot order defined for the server. The specified boot device is used only once. After the server has rebooted, this setting is ignored.



### Note

Before you reboot the server, ensure that the virtual drive you select is enabled on the Cisco Flexible Flash card. To verify this, go to the **Storage** tab, select the card, then go to the **Virtual Drive Info** subtab.

### Before You Begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Configure Boot Override Priority**. The **Boot Override Priority** dialog box opens.
- Step 4** In the **Boot Override Priority** dialog box, select a virtual drive to boot from.
- Step 5** Click **OK**.

## Resetting the Flexible Flash Controller

In normal operation, it should not be necessary to reset the Cisco Flexible Flash. We recommend that you perform this procedure only when explicitly directed to do so by a technical support representative.

**Note**

This operation will disrupt traffic to the virtual drives on the Cisco Flexible Flash controller.

### Before You Begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Storage Adapters** table, click the FlexFlash controller.  
The properties of the selected FlexFlash controller appear in the tabbed menu below the **Storage Adapters** area.
- Step 5** In the **Storage Card** tabbed menu, click the **Controller Info** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area, click **Reset Cisco Flex Flash**.
- Step 7** Click **OK** to confirm.
- 

## Configuring BIOS Settings

### Configuring Main BIOS Settings

#### Before You Begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Configure BIOS**.
- Step 4** In the **Configure BIOS Parameters** dialog box, click the **Main** tab.
- Step 5** Specify whether the server should be rebooted after you save your changes.  
If you want your changes applied automatically after you click **Save Changes**, check the **Reboot Host Immediately** check box. CIMC immediately reboots the server and applies your changes.  
  
If you want to apply your changes at a later time, clear the **Reboot Host Immediately** check box. CIMC stores the changes and applies them the next time the server reboots.
- Note** If there are existing BIOS parameter changes pending, CIMC automatically overwrites the stored values with the current settings when you click **Save Changes**.
- Step 6** In the **Main** tab, update the BIOS settings fields.  
The BIOS parameters available depend on the model of the server that you are using. For descriptions and information about the options for each BIOS setting, see one the following topics:
- [Main BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers , on page 155](#)
  - [Main BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers , on page 170](#)
  - [Main BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers , on page 198](#)
  - [Main BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers , on page 211](#)
  - [Main BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers , on page 222](#)
- Step 7** (Optional) You can reset the parameters or restore the default values using the buttons at the bottom of the **Configure BIOS Parameters** dialog box.  
The available options are:

Name	Description
<b>Save Changes</b> button	Saves the settings for the BIOS parameters on all three tabs and closes the dialog box.  If the <b>Reboot Host Immediately</b> check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.
<b>Reset Values</b> button	Restores the values for the BIOS parameters on all three tabs to the settings that were in effect when this dialog box was first opened.
<b>Restore Defaults</b> button	Sets the BIOS parameters on all three tabs to their default settings.
<b>Cancel</b> button	Closes the dialog box without making any changes.

**Important** The buttons in this dialog box affect all BIOS parameters on all available tabs, not just the parameters on the tab that you are viewing.

**Step 8** Click **Save Changes**.

---

## Configuring Advanced BIOS Settings

**Note**

Depending on your installed hardware, some configuration options described in this topic may not appear.

**Before You Begin**

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

**Procedure**

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.

**Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Configure BIOS**.

**Step 4** In the **Configure BIOS Parameters** dialog box, click the **Advanced** tab.

**Step 5** Specify whether the server should be rebooted after you save your changes.

If you want your changes applied automatically after you click **Save Changes**, check the **Reboot Host Immediately** check box. CIMC immediately reboots the server and applies your changes.

If you want to apply your changes at a later time, clear the **Reboot Host Immediately** check box. CIMC stores the changes and applies them the next time the server reboots.

**Note** If there are existing BIOS parameter changes pending, CIMC automatically overwrites the stored values with the current settings when you click **Save Changes**.

**Step 6** In the **Advanced** tab, update the BIOS settings fields.

The BIOS parameters available depend on the model of the server that you are using. For descriptions and information about the options for each BIOS setting, see one the following topics:

- [Advanced BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers](#) , on page 156
- [Advanced BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers](#) , on page 171
- [Advanced BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers](#) , on page 199
- [Advanced BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers](#) , on page 211
- [Advanced BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers](#) , on page 223

**Step 7** (Optional) You can reset the parameters or restore the default values using the buttons at the bottom of the **Configure BIOS Parameters** dialog box.

The available options are:

Name	Description
<b>Save Changes</b> button	Saves the settings for the BIOS parameters on all three tabs and closes the dialog box.  If the <b>Reboot Host Immediately</b> check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.
<b>Reset Values</b> button	Restores the values for the BIOS parameters on all three tabs to the settings that were in effect when this dialog box was first opened.
<b>Restore Defaults</b> button	Sets the BIOS parameters on all three tabs to their default settings.
<b>Cancel</b> button	Closes the dialog box without making any changes.

**Important** The buttons in this dialog box affect all BIOS parameters on all available tabs, not just the parameters on the tab that you are viewing.

**Step 8** Click **Save Changes**.

## Configuring Server Management BIOS Settings

### Before You Begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.

**Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Configure BIOS**.

**Step 4** In the **Configure BIOS Parameters** dialog box, click the **Server Management** tab.

**Step 5** Specify whether the server should be rebooted after you save your changes.

If you want your changes applied automatically after you click **Save Changes**, check the **Reboot Host Immediately** check box. CIMC immediately reboots the server and applies your changes.

If you want to apply your changes at a later time, clear the **Reboot Host Immediately** check box. CIMC stores the changes and applies them the next time the server reboots.

**Note** If there are existing BIOS parameter changes pending, CIMC automatically overwrites the stored values with the current settings when you click **Save Changes**.

**Step 6** In the **Server Management** tab, update the BIOS settings fields.

The BIOS parameters available depend on the model of the server that you are using. For descriptions and information about the options for each BIOS setting, see one the following topics:

- [Server Management BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers](#) , on page 167

- [Server Management BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers](#) , on page 180
- [Server Management BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers](#) , on page 208
- [Server Management BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers](#) , on page 220
- [Server Management BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers](#) , on page 232

**Step 7** (Optional) You can reset the parameters or restore the default values using the buttons at the bottom of the **Configure BIOS Parameters** dialog box.

The available options are:

Name	Description
<b>Save Changes</b> button	Saves the settings for the BIOS parameters on all three tabs and closes the dialog box.  If the <b>Reboot Host Immediately</b> check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.
<b>Reset Values</b> button	Restores the values for the BIOS parameters on all three tabs to the settings that were in effect when this dialog box was first opened.
<b>Restore Defaults</b> button	Sets the BIOS parameters on all three tabs to their default settings.
<b>Cancel</b> button	Closes the dialog box without making any changes.

**Important** The buttons in this dialog box affect all BIOS parameters on all available tabs, not just the parameters on the tab that you are viewing.

**Step 8** Click **Save Changes**.

---



## CHAPTER 4

# Viewing Server Properties

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Viewing Server Properties, page 31](#)
- [Viewing CIMC Information, page 32](#)
- [Viewing CPU Properties, page 33](#)
- [Viewing Memory Properties, page 33](#)
- [Viewing Power Supply Properties, page 35](#)
- [Viewing Storage Properties, page 36](#)
- [Viewing PCI Adapter Properties, page 37](#)

## Viewing Server Properties

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Server Properties** area of the **Server Summary** pane, review the following information:

Name	Description
<b>Product Name</b> field	The model name of the server.
<b>Serial Number</b> field	The serial number for the server.
<b>PID</b> field	The product ID.
<b>UUID</b> field	The UUID assigned to the server.
<b>BIOS Version</b> field	The version of the BIOS running on the server.

Name	Description
Description field	A user-defined description for the server.

## Viewing CIMC Information

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) Information** area of the **Server Summary** pane, review the following information:

Name	Description
Hostname field	A user-defined hostname for the CIMC.
IP Address field	The IP address for the CIMC.
MAC Address field	The MAC address assigned to the active network interface to the CIMC.
Firmware Version field	The current CIMC firmware version.
Current Time field	<p>The current date and time according to the CIMC clock.</p> <p><b>Note</b> CIMC gets the current date and time from the server BIOS. To change this information, reboot the server and press F2 when prompted to access the BIOS configuration menu. Then change the date or time using the options on the main BIOS configuration tab.</p>



# Viewing CPU Properties

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **CPUs** tab.
- Step 4** Review the following information for each CPU:

Name	Description
<b>Socket Name</b> field	The socket in which the CPU is installed.
<b>Vendor</b> field	The vendor for the CPU.
<b>Status</b> field	The status of the CPU.
<b>Family</b> field	The family to which this CPU belongs.
<b>Speed</b> field	The CPU speed, in megahertz.
<b>Version</b> field	The CPU version.
<b>Number of Cores</b> field	The number of cores in the CPU.
<b>Signature</b> field	The signature information for the CPU.
<b>Number of Threads</b> field	The maximum number of threads that the CPU can process concurrently.

# Viewing Memory Properties

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Memory** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Memory Summary** area, review the following summary information about memory:

Name	Description
<b>Memory Speed</b> field	The memory speed, in megahertz.

Name	Description
<b>Failed Memory</b> field	The amount of memory that is currently failing, in megabytes.
<b>Total Memory</b> field	The total amount of memory available on the server if all DIMMs are fully functional.
<b>Ignored Memory</b> field	The amount of memory currently not available for use, in megabytes.
<b>Effective Memory</b> field	The actual amount of memory currently available to the server.
<b>Number of Ignored DIMMs</b> field	The number of DIMMs that the server cannot access.
<b>Redundant Memory</b> field	The amount of memory used for redundant storage.
<b>Number of Failed DIMMs</b> field	The number of DIMMs that have failed and cannot be used.
<b>Memory RAS Possible</b> field	Details about the RAS memory configuration that the server supports.
<b>Memory Configuration</b> field	<p>The current memory configuration. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Maximum Performance</b>—The system automatically optimizes the memory performance.</li> <li>• <b>Mirroring</b>—The server maintains two identical copies of the data in memory. This option effectively halves the available memory on the server, as one half is automatically reserved for mirrored copy.</li> <li>• <b>Sparing</b>—The system reserves some memory for use in the event a DIMM fails. If that happens, the server takes the DIMM offline and replaces it with the reserved memory. This option provides less redundancy than mirroring, but it leaves more of the memory available for programs running on the server.</li> </ul>

**Step 5** In the **Memory Details** table, review the following detailed information about each DIMM:

**Tip** Click a column header to sort the table rows, according to the entries in that column.

Name	Description
<b>Name</b> column	The name of the DIMM slot in which the memory module is installed.
<b>Capacity</b> column	The size of the DIMM.
<b>Channel Speed</b> column	The clock speed of the memory channel, in megahertz.
<b>Channel Type</b> column	The type of memory channel.
<b>Memory Type Detail</b> column	The type of memory used in the device.

Name	Description
<b>Bank Locator</b> column	The location of the DIMM within the memory bank.
<b>Manufacturer</b> column	The vendor ID of the manufacturer. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>0x2C00</b>—Micron Technology, Inc.</li> <li>• <b>0x5105</b>—Qimonda AG i. In.</li> <li>• <b>0x802C</b>—Micron Technology, Inc.</li> <li>• <b>0x80AD</b>—Hynix Semiconductor Inc.</li> <li>• <b>0x80CE</b>—Samsung Electronics, Inc.</li> <li>• <b>0x8551</b>—Qimonda AG i. In.</li> <li>• <b>0xAD00</b>—Hynix Semiconductor Inc.</li> <li>• <b>0xCE00</b>—Samsung Electronics, Inc.</li> </ul>
<b>Serial Number</b> column	The serial number of the DIMM.
<b>Asset Tag</b> column	The asset tag associated with the DIMM, if any.
<b>Part Number</b> column	The part number for the DIMM assigned by the vendor.
<b>Visibility</b> column	Whether the DIMM is available to the server.
<b>Operability</b> column	Whether the DIMM is currently operating correctly.
<b>Data Width</b> column	The amount of data the DIMM supports, in bits.

## Viewing Power Supply Properties

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Power Supplies** tab.
- Step 4** Review the following information for each power supply:
  - Tip** Click a column header to sort the table rows, according to the entries in that column.

Name	Description
<b>Device ID</b> column	The identifier for the power supply unit.
<b>Input</b> column	The input into the power supply, in watts.
<b>Max Output</b> column	The maximum output from the power supply, in watts.
<b>FW Version</b> column	The firmware version for the power supply.
<b>Product ID</b> column	The product identifier for the power supply assigned by the vendor.

## Viewing Storage Properties

### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.

**Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Storage** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Storage Adapters** area, review the information about the available adapter cards. This area contains a table listing all MegaRAID and Cisco Flexible Flash controllers on the server that can be managed through CIMC. To view details about a particular storage device, select it in the table and view the information in the tabs below.

If a particular storage device does not appear on this tab it cannot be managed through CIMC. To view the status of an unsupported device, see the documentation for that device.

**Tip** Click a column header to sort the table rows, according to the entries in that column.

**Step 5** In the **Storage Adapters** area, click a row to view the detailed properties of that adapter. The properties of the selected storage adapter appear in the tabbed menu below the **Storage Adapters** area.

**Step 6** Select the **Controller Info** tab and review the information. This tab displays information about the MegaRAID controller or Cisco Flexible Flash controller selected in the **Storage Adapters** table.

**Note** For detailed descriptions of the fields displayed in this tab and the following tabs, see the online help provided in the UCSM GUI.

**Step 7** Select the **Physical Drive Info** tab and review the information. This tab shows the following information for the controller selected in the **Storage Adapters** table.

- General drive information
- Identification information
- Drive status

**Step 8** Select the **Virtual Drive Info** tab and review the information.

This tab shows the following information for the controller selected in the **Storage Adapters** table.

- General drive information
- RAID information
- Physical drive information

**Step 9** Select the **Battery Backup Unit** tab and review the information.

This tab shows information about the backup battery on the controller selected in the **Storage Adapters** table.

**Note** This tab does not apply if you select a Cisco Flexible Flash controller in the **Storage Adapters** table.

## Viewing PCI Adapter Properties

### Before You Begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.

**Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **PCI Adapters** tab.

**Step 4** In the **PCI Adapters** area, review the following information for the installed PCI adapters:

Name	Description
Slot ID column	The slot in which the adapter resides.
Product Name column	The name of the adapter.
Vendor ID column	The adapter ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Vendor ID column	The secondary adapter ID assigned by the vendor.
Device ID column	The device ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Device ID column	The secondary device ID assigned by the vendor.





## CHAPTER 5

# Viewing Server Sensors

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Viewing the Fault Summary, page 39](#)
- [Viewing Power Supply Sensors, page 40](#)
- [Viewing Fan Sensors, page 42](#)
- [Viewing Temperature Sensors, page 43](#)
- [Viewing Voltage Sensors, page 44](#)
- [Viewing Current Sensors, page 45](#)
- [Viewing LED Sensors, page 46](#)
- [Viewing Storage Sensors, page 46](#)

## Viewing the Fault Summary

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Fault Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Discrete Sensors** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor.
Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Critical</b></li><li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li><li>• <b>Warning</b></li></ul>

Name	Description
Reading column	The basic state of the sensor.

**Step 4** In the **Threshold Sensors** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor.
Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Critical</b></li> <li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b></li> </ul>
Reading column	The value reported by the sensor.
Units column	The units in which the sensor data is reported.
Warning Threshold Min column	The minimum warning threshold.
Warning Threshold Max column	The maximum warning threshold.
Critical Threshold Min column	The minimum critical threshold.
Critical Threshold Max column	The maximum critical threshold.

## Viewing Power Supply Sensors



**Tip**

Click a column header to sort the table rows according to the entries in that column.



## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.
- Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Power Supply** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Properties** area, the **Redundancy Status** field displays the status of the power supply redundancy of the server.
- Step 5** In the **Discrete Sensors** area, you can view the following statistics for the server:

Name	Description
<b>Sensor Name</b> column	The name of the sensor.
<b>Status</b> column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Unknown</b></li> <li>• <b>Informational</b></li> <li>• <b>Normal</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b></li> <li>• <b>Critical</b></li> <li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li> </ul>
<b>Reading</b> column	The basic state of the sensor.

- Step 6** In the **Threshold Sensors** area, you can view the following statistics for the server:

Name	Description
<b>Sensor Name</b> column	The name of the sensor.
<b>Status</b> column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Unknown</b></li> <li>• <b>Informational</b></li> <li>• <b>Normal</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b></li> <li>• <b>Critical</b></li> <li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li> </ul>
<b>Reading</b> column	The current power usage, in watts.
<b>Warning Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum warning threshold.

Name	Description
<b>Warning Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum warning threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum critical threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum critical threshold.

## Viewing Fan Sensors

### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.

**Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Fan** tab.

**Step 4** View the following fan-related statistics for the server:

**Tip** Click a column header to sort the table rows according to the entries in that column.

Name	Description
<b>Sensor Name</b> column	The name of the sensor.
<b>Status</b> column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Unknown</b></li> <li>• <b>Informational</b></li> <li>• <b>Normal</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b></li> <li>• <b>Critical</b></li> <li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li> </ul>
<b>Speed</b> column	The fan speed in RPM.
<b>Warning Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum warning threshold.
<b>Warning Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum warning threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum critical threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum critical threshold.

# Viewing Temperature Sensors

## Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.

**Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Temperature** tab.

**Step 4** View the following temperature-related statistics for the server:

**Tip** Click a column header to sort the table rows according to the entries in that column.

Name	Description
<b>Sensor Name</b> column	The name of the sensor.
<b>Status</b> column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Unknown</b></li><li>• <b>Informational</b></li><li>• <b>Normal</b></li><li>• <b>Warning</b></li><li>• <b>Critical</b></li><li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li></ul>
<b>Temperature</b> column	The current temperature, in Celsius.
<b>Warning Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum warning threshold.
<b>Warning Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum warning threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum critical threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum critical threshold.

# Viewing Voltage Sensors

## Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.

**Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Voltage** tab.

**Step 4** View the following voltage-related statistics for the server:

**Tip** Click a column header to sort the table rows according to the entries in that column.

Name	Description
<b>Sensor Name</b> column	The name of the sensor.
<b>Status</b> column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Unknown</b></li> <li>• <b>Informational</b></li> <li>• <b>Normal</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b></li> <li>• <b>Critical</b></li> <li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li> </ul>
<b>Voltage</b> column	The current voltage, in volts.
<b>Warning Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum warning threshold.
<b>Warning Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum warning threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum critical threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum critical threshold.

# Viewing Current Sensors

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.
- Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Current** tab.
- Step 4** View the following current-related statistics on the **Current** tab:

Name	Description
<b>Sensor Name</b> column	The name of the sensor.
<b>Status</b> column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Unknown</b></li><li>• <b>Informational</b></li><li>• <b>Normal</b></li><li>• <b>Warning</b></li><li>• <b>Critical</b></li><li>• <b>Non-Recoverable</b></li></ul>
<b>Current</b> column	The current in amperes.
<b>Warning Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum warning threshold.
<b>Warning Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum warning threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Min</b> column	The minimum critical threshold.
<b>Critical Threshold Max</b> column	The maximum critical threshold.

## Viewing LED Sensors

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.
- Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **LEDs** tab.
- Step 4** View the following LED-related statistics for the server:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor.
LED State column	Whether the LED is on, blinking, or off.
LED Color column	The current color of the LED.  For details about what the colors mean, see the hardware installation guide for the type of server you are using.

## Viewing Storage Sensors

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.
- Step 3** In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
- Step 4** View the following storage-related statistics for the server:

Name	Description
Name column	The name of the storage device.
Status column	A brief description of the storage device status.
LED Status column	The current LED color, if any.  To make the physical LED on the storage device blink, select <b>Turn On</b> from the drop-down list. To let the storage device control whether the LED blinks, select <b>Turn Off</b> .  <b>Note</b> This information is only available for some C-Series servers.









## CHAPTER 6

# Managing Remote Presence

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Configuring Serial Over LAN, page 49](#)
- [Configuring Virtual Media, page 50](#)
- [KVM Console, page 51](#)
- [Configuring the Virtual KVM, page 52](#)

## Configuring Serial Over LAN

Serial over LAN enables the input and output of the serial port of a managed system to be redirected over IP. Configure and use serial over LAN on your server when you want to reach the host console with CIMC.

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure serial over LAN.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Remote Presence**.
- Step 3** In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Serial over LAN** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Serial over LAN Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enabled</b> check box	If checked, Serial over LAN (SoL) is enabled on this server.

Name	Description
<b>Baud Rate</b> drop-down list	<p>The baud rate the system uses for SoL communication. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>9600 bps</b></li> <li>• <b>19.2 kbps</b></li> <li>• <b>38.4 kbps</b></li> <li>• <b>57.6 kbps</b></li> <li>• <b>115.2 kbps</b></li> </ul>
<b>Com Port</b> drop-down list	<p>The serial port through which the system routes SoL communication.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This field is only available on some C-Series servers. If it is not available, the server always uses COM port 0 for SoL communication.</p> <p>You can select one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>com0</b>—SoL communication is routed through COM port 0, an externally accessible serial port that supports either a physical RJ45 connection to an external device or a virtual SoL connection to a network device.</li> </ul> <p>If you select this option, the system enables SoL and disables the RJ45 connection, which means that the server can no longer support an external serial device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>com1</b>—SoL communication is routed through COM port 1, an internal port accessible only through SoL.</li> </ul> <p>If you select this option, you can use SoL on COM port 1 and the physical RJ45 connection on COM port 0.</p> <p><b>Note</b> Changing the Com Port setting disconnects any existing SoL sessions.</p>

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## Configuring Virtual Media

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure virtual media.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Remote Presence**.
- Step 3** In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Virtual Media** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Virtual Media Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enabled</b> check box	If checked, virtual media is enabled.  <b>Note</b> If you clear this check box, all virtual media devices are automatically detached from the host.
<b>Active Sessions</b> field	The number of virtual media sessions currently running.
<b>Enable Virtual Media Encryption</b> check box	If checked, all virtual media communications are encrypted.

- Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## KVM Console

The KVM console is an interface accessible from CIMC that emulates a direct keyboard, video, and mouse (KVM) connection to the server. The KVM console allows you to connect to the server from a remote location.

Instead of using CD/DVD or floppy drives physically connected to the server, the KVM console uses virtual media, which are actual disk drives or disk image files that are mapped to virtual CD/DVD or floppy drives. You can map any of the following to a virtual drive:

- CD/DVD or floppy drive on your computer
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on your computer
- USB flash drive on your computer
- CD/DVD or floppy drive on the network
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on the network
- USB flash drive on the network

You can use the KVM console to install an OS on the server.

**Note**

When launching the KVM Console from Internet Explorer 6 SP1 on Windows Server 2003, the browser will report that it cannot download a required file. If this occurs, click the browser Tools menu and select Internet Options. Click the Advanced tab and, in the Security section, uncheck the checkbox for "Do not save encrypted pages to disk." Launch the KVM Console again.

## Configuring the Virtual KVM

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure the virtual KVM.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Remote Presence**.
- Step 3** In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.
- Step 4** On the **Virtual KVM** tab, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enabled</b> check box	If checked, the virtual KVM is enabled.  <b>Note</b> The virtual media viewer is accessed through the KVM. If you disable the KVM console, CIMC also disables access to all virtual media devices attached to the host.
<b>Max Sessions</b> drop-down list	The maximum number of concurrent KVM sessions allowed. You can select any number between 1 and 4.
<b>Active Sessions</b> field	The number of KVM sessions running on the server.
<b>Remote Port</b> field	The port used for KVM communication.
<b>Enable Video Encryption</b> check box	If checked, the server encrypts all video information sent through the KVM.
<b>Enable Local Server Video</b> check box	If checked, the KVM session is also displayed on any monitor attached to the server.

- Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## Enabling the Virtual KVM

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to enable the virtual KVM.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Remote Presence**.
  - Step 3** In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.
  - Step 4** On the **Virtual KVM** tab, check the **Enabled** check box.
  - Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.
- 

## Disabling the Virtual KVM

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to disable the virtual KVM.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Remote Presence**.
  - Step 3** In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.
  - Step 4** On the **Virtual KVM** tab, uncheck the **Enabled** check box.
  - Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.
-





## CHAPTER 7

# Managing User Accounts

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Configuring Local Users, page 55](#)
- [Active Directory, page 56](#)
- [Viewing User Sessions, page 60](#)

## Configuring Local Users

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure or modify local user accounts.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **User Management**.
- Step 3** In the **User Management** pane, click the **Local User** tab.
- Step 4** To configure or modify a local user account, click a row.
- Step 5** In the **User Details** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
ID column	The unique identifier for the user.
Enabled check box	If checked, the user is enabled on the CIMC.
Username column	The username for the user.

Name	Description
Role column	<p>The role assigned to the user. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>read-only</b>—A user with this role can view information but cannot make any changes.</li> <li>• <b>user</b>—A user with this role can perform the following tasks: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ View all information</li> <li>◦ Manage the power control options such as power on, power cycle, and power off</li> <li>◦ Launch the KVM console and virtual media</li> <li>◦ Clear all logs</li> <li>◦ Toggle the locator LED</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>admin</b>—A user with this role can perform all actions available through the GUI, CLI, and IPMI.</li> </ul>

**Step 6** Enter password information.

**Step 7** Click **Save Changes**.

## Active Directory

Active Directory is a technology that provides a variety of network services including LDAP-like directory services, Kerberos-based authentication, and DNS-based naming. The CIMC utilizes the Kerberos-based authentication service of Active Directory.

When Active Directory is enabled in the CIMC, user authentication and role authorization is performed by Active Directory for user accounts not found in the local user database.

By checking the Enable Encryption check box in the **Active Directory Properties** area, you can require the server to encrypt data sent to Active Directory.

## Configuring the Active Directory Server

The CIMC can be configured to use Active Directory for user authentication and authorization. To use Active Directory, configure users with an attribute that holds the user role and locale information for the CIMC. You can use an existing LDAP attribute that is mapped to the CIMC user roles and locales or you can modify the Active Directory schema to add a new custom attribute, such as the CiscoAVPair attribute, which has an attribute ID of 1.3.6.1.4.1.9.287247.1. For more information about altering the Active Directory schema, see the article at <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb727064.aspx>.

The following steps are to be performed on the Active Directory server.





**Note** This example creates a custom attribute named CiscoAVPair, but you can also use an existing LDAP attribute that is mapped to the CIMC user roles and locales.

## Procedure

**Step 1** Ensure that the Active Directory schema snap-in is installed.

**Step 2** Using the Active Directory schema snap-in, add a new attribute with the following properties:

Properties	Value
Common Name	CiscoAVPair
LDAP Display Name	CiscoAVPair
Unique X500 Object ID	1.3.6.1.4.1.9.287247.1
Description	CiscoAVPair
Syntax	Case Sensitive String

**Step 3** Add the CiscoAVPair attribute to the user class using the Active Directory snap-in:

- Expand the **Classes** node in the left pane and type U to select the user class.
- Click the **Attributes** tab and click **Add**.
- Type C to select the CiscoAVPair attribute.
- Click **OK**.

**Step 4** Add the following user role values to the CiscoAVPair attribute, for the users that you want to have access to CIMC:

Role	CiscoAVPair Attribute Value
admin	shell:roles="admin"
user	shell:roles="user"
read-only	shell:roles="read-only"

**Note** For more information about adding values to attributes, see the article at <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb727064.aspx>.

## What to Do Next

Use the CIMC to configure Active Directory.

## Configuring Active Directory in CIMC

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **User Management**.
- Step 3** In the **User Management** pane, click the **Active Directory** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Active Directory Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enabled</b> check box	If checked, user authentication and role authorization is performed by Active Directory for user accounts not found in the local user database.  If you check this box, CIMC enables the rest of the fields in this section.
<b>Domain Controller</b> fields	You can specify up to three LDAP domain controllers that CIMC can use to access the LDAP database.  CIMC tries to contact the database using the IP address in the order they are specified on this tab.
<b>Timeout</b> field	The number of seconds the CIMC waits until the LDAP search operation times out.  If the search operation times out, CIMC tries to connect to the next domain controller or global catalog listed on this tab, if one is available.
<b>Enable Encryption</b> check box	If checked, the server encrypts all information it sends to Active Directory.
<b>Domain</b> field	The IPv4 domain that all users must be in.  This field is required unless you specify at least one Global Catalog server address.
<b>Attributes</b> field	An LDAP attribute that contains the role and locale information for the user. This property is always a name-value pair. The system queries the user record for the value that matches this attribute name.  The LDAP attribute must have the following attribute ID: CiscoAvPair  <b>Note</b> If you do not specify this property, user access is restricted to read-only.

Name	Description
<b>Global Catalog</b> fields	<p>A Global Catalog allows CIMC to search for a user in the Active Directory regardless of the domain that user resides in.</p> <p>You can enter the IP address or fully qualified domain name (FQDN) for the Global Catalog in each of the three <b>Global Catalog</b> fields. CIMC tries to access the catalog using the IP addresses or FQDNs in the order they are specified on this tab.</p>

**Step 5** (Optional) In the **Active Directory Groups** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>LDAP Group Authorization</b> check box	<p>If checked, user authentication is also done on the group level for users that are not found in the local user database or who are not individually authorized to use CIMC in the Active Directory.</p> <p>If you check this box, CIMC enables the <b>Configure Group</b> button.</p>
<b>Group Name</b> column	The name of the group in the Active Directory database that is authorized to access the server.
<b>Group Domain</b> column	The Active Directory domain the group must reside in.
<b>Role</b> column	<p>The role assigned to all users in this Active Directory group. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>read-only</b>—A user with this role can view information but cannot make any changes.</li> <li>• <b>user</b>—A user with this role can perform the following tasks: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ View all information</li> <li>◦ Manage the power control options such as power on, power cycle, and power off</li> <li>◦ Launch the KVM console and virtual media</li> <li>◦ Clear all logs</li> <li>◦ Toggle the locator LED</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>admin</b>—A user with this role can perform all actions available through the GUI, CLI, and IPMI.</li> </ul>

**Step 6** Click **Save Changes**.

# Viewing User Sessions

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **User Management**.
- Step 3** In the **User Management** pane, click the **Sessions** tab.
- Step 4** View the following information about current user sessions:
- Tip** Click a column header to sort the table rows, according to the entries in that column.

Name	Description
<b>Session ID</b> column	The unique identifier for the session.
<b>Username</b> column	The username for the user.
<b>IP Address</b> column	The IP address from which the user accessed the server.
<b>Type</b> column	The method by which the user accessed the server.
<b>Action</b> column	<p>If your user account is assigned the <b>admin</b> user role, this column displays <b>Terminate</b> if you can force the associated user session to end. Otherwise it displays <b>N/A</b>.</p> <p><b>Note</b> You cannot terminate your current session from this tab.</p>



## CHAPTER 8

# Configuring Network-Related Settings

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Server NIC Configuration, page 61](#)
- [Configuring Common Properties, page 64](#)
- [Configuring IPv4, page 64](#)
- [Connecting to a VLAN, page 65](#)
- [Connecting to a Port Profile, page 66](#)
- [Network Security Configuration, page 66](#)

## Server NIC Configuration

### Server NICs

#### NIC Mode

The NIC mode setting determines which ports can reach the CIMC. The following network mode options are available, depending on your platform:

- **Dedicated**—The management port is used to access the CIMC.
- **Shared LOM**—Any LOM (LAN On Motherboard) port can be used to access the CIMC.
- **Shared LOM 10G**—Any 10G LOM port can be used to access the CIMC. This option is only available for some adapter cards.
- **Cisco Card**—Any port on the adapter card can be used to access the CIMC. The Cisco adapter card has to be installed in a slot with Network Communications Services Interface protocol (NCSI) support.
- **Shared LOM Extended**—Any LOM port or adapter card port can be used to access the CIMC. The Cisco adapter card has to be installed in a slot with NCSI support.

### NIC Redundancy

The following NIC redundancy options are available, depending on the selected NIC mode and your platform:

- **none**—Each port associated with the configured NIC mode operates independently. The ports do not fail over if there is a problem.
- **active-active**—If supported, all ports associated with the configured NIC mode operate simultaneously. This increases throughput and provides multiple paths to the CIMC.
- **active-standby**—If a port associated with the configured NIC mode fails, traffic will fail over to one of the other ports associated with the NIC mode.

**Note**

If you select this option, make sure all ports associated with the configured NIC mode are connected to the same subnet to ensure that traffic is secure regardless of which port is used.

The available redundancy modes vary depending on the selected network mode and your platform. For the available modes, see the *Hardware Installation Guide* (HIG) for the type of server you are using. The C-Series HIGs are available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/prod\\_installation\\_guides\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/prod_installation_guides_list.html)

## Configuring Server NICs

Configure a server NIC when you want to set the NIC mode and NIC redundancy.

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure the NIC.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Network**.
  - Step 3** In the **Network** pane, click the **Network Settings** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **NIC Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>NIC Mode</b> drop-down list	<p>Determines the ports that can be used to access the CIMC. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Dedicated</b>—The management port is used to access the CIMC.</li> <li>• <b>Shared LOM</b>—Any LOM (LAN On Motherboard) port can be used to access the CIMC.</li> <li>• <b>Shared LOM 10G</b>—Any 10G LOM port can be used to access the CIMC. This option is only available for some adapter cards.</li> <li>• <b>Cisco Card</b>—Any port on the adapter card can be used to access the CIMC. The Cisco adapter card has to be installed in a slot with Network Communications Services Interface protocol (NCSI) support.</li> <li>• <b>Shared LOM Extended</b>—Any LOM port or adapter card port can be used to access the CIMC. The Cisco adapter card has to be installed in a slot with NCSI support.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you select any of the shared LOM options, make sure that all host ports belong to the same subnet.</p>
<b>NIC Redundancy</b> drop-down list	<p>The available NIC redundancy options depend on the selected NIC mode and the model of the server that you are using. If you do not see a particular option, then it is not available for the selected mode or server model.</p> <p>This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>none</b>—Each port associated with the configured NIC mode operates independently. The ports do not fail over if there is a problem.</li> <li>• <b>active-active</b>—If supported, all ports associated with the configured NIC mode operate simultaneously. This increases throughput and provides multiple paths to the CIMC.</li> <li>• <b>active-standby</b>—If a port associated with the configured NIC mode fails, traffic will fail over to one of the other ports associated with the NIC mode.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you select this option, make sure all ports associated with the configured NIC mode are connected to the same subnet to ensure that traffic is secure regardless of which port is used.</p>
<b>MAC Address</b> field	The MAC address of the CIMC network interface selected in the <b>NIC Mode</b> field.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

# Configuring Common Properties

Use common properties to describe your server.

## Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure common properties.

## Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Network**.
  - Step 3** In the **Network** pane, click the **Network Settings** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Hostname** field, enter the name of the host.
  - Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.
- 

# Configuring IPv4

## Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure IPv4.

## Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Network**.
  - Step 3** In the **Network** pane, click the **Network Settings** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **IPv4 Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enable IPv4</b> check box	If checked, IPv4 is enabled.
<b>Use DHCP</b> check box	If checked, the CIMC uses DHCP.
<b>IP Address</b> field	The IP address for the CIMC.
<b>Subnet Mask</b> field	The subnet mask for the IP address.
<b>Gateway</b> field	The gateway for the IP address.



Name	Description
<b>Obtain DNS Server Addresses from DHCP</b> check box	If checked, the CIMC retrieves the DNS server addresses from DHCP.
<b>Preferred DNS Server</b> field	The IP address of the primary DNS server.
<b>Alternate DNS Server</b> field	The IP address of the secondary DNS server.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

---

## Connecting to a VLAN

### Before You Begin

You must be logged in as admin to connect to a VLAN.

### Procedure

---

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Network**.

**Step 3** In the **Network** pane, click the **Network Settings** tab.

**Step 4** In the **VLAN Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enable VLAN</b> check box	If checked, the CIMC is connected to a virtual LAN.  <b>Note</b> You can configure a VLAN or a port profile, but you cannot use both. If you want to use a port profile, make sure this check box is not checked.
<b>VLAN ID</b> field	The VLAN ID.
<b>Priority</b> field	The priority of this system on the VLAN.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

---

# Connecting to a Port Profile


**Note**

You can configure a port profile or a VLAN, but you cannot use both. If you want to use a port profile, make sure the **Enable VLAN** check box in the **VLAN Properties** area is not checked.

**Before You Begin**

You must be logged in as admin to connect to a port profile.

**Procedure**

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Network**.
- Step 3** In the **Network** pane, click the **Network Settings** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Port Profile** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Port Profile field</b>	<p>The port profile CIMC should use to configure the management interface, the virtual Ethernet, and the VIF on supported adapter cards such as the Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card.</p> <p>Enter up to 80 alphanumeric characters. You cannot use spaces or other special characters except for - (hyphen) and _ (underscore). In addition, the port profile name cannot begin with a hyphen.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The port profile must be defined on the switch to which this server is connected.</p>

- Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## Network Security Configuration

### Network Security

The CIMC uses IP blocking as network security. IP blocking prevents the connection between a server or website and certain IP addresses or ranges of addresses. IP blocking effectively bans undesired connections from those computers to a website, mail server, or other Internet servers.

IP banning is commonly used to protect against denial of service (DoS) attacks. CIMC bans IP addresses by setting up an IP blocking fail count.

## Configuring Network Security

Configure network security if you want to set up an IP blocking fail count.

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure network security.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Network**.
- Step 3** In the **Network** pane, click the **Network Security** tab.
- Step 4** In the **IP Blocking Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enable IP Blocking</b> check box	Check this box to enable IP blocking.
<b>IP Blocking Fail Count</b> field	The number of times a user can attempt to log in unsuccessfully before the system locks that user out for a specified length of time.  The number of unsuccessful login attempts must occur within the time frame specified in the <b>IP Blocking Fail Window</b> field.  Enter an integer between 3 and 10.
<b>IP Blocking Fail Window</b> field	The length of time, in seconds, in which the unsuccessful login attempts must occur in order for the user to be locked out.  Enter an integer between 60 and 120.
<b>IP Blocking Penalty Time</b> field	The number of seconds the user remains locked out if they exceed the maximum number of login attempts within the specified time window.  Enter an integer between 300 and 900.

- Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.
-





## CHAPTER 9

# Managing Network Adapters

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Cisco UCS C-Series Network Adapters, page 69](#)
- [Viewing Network Adapter Properties, page 70](#)
- [Configuring Adapter Properties, page 73](#)
- [Managing vHBAs, page 75](#)
- [Managing vNICs, page 88](#)
- [Managing VM FEX, page 99](#)
- [Backing Up and Restoring the Adapter Configuration, page 103](#)
- [Managing Adapter Firmware, page 105](#)
- [Resetting the Adapter, page 107](#)

## Overview of the Cisco UCS C-Series Network Adapters



### Note

The procedures in this chapter are available only when a Cisco UCS C-Series network adapter is installed in the chassis.

A Cisco UCS C-Series network adapter can be installed to provide options for I/O consolidation and virtualization support. The following adapters are available:

- Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card
- Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card

The interactive *UCS Hardware and Software Interoperability Utility* lets you view the supported components and configurations for a selected server model and software release. The utility is available at the following URL: <http://www.cisco.com/web/techdoc/ucs/interoperability/matrix/matrix.html>

### Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card

The Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card is optimized for virtualized environments, for organizations that seek increased mobility in their physical environments, and for data centers that want reduced costs through NIC, HBA, cabling, and switch reduction and reduced management overhead. This Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) PCIe card offers the following benefits:

- Allows up to 16 virtual Fibre Channel and 16 virtual Ethernet adapters to be provisioned in virtualized or nonvirtualized environments using just-in-time provisioning, providing tremendous system flexibility and allowing consolidation of multiple physical adapters.
- Delivers uncompromising virtualization support, including hardware-based implementation of Cisco VN-Link technology and pass-through switching.
- Improves system security and manageability by providing visibility and portability of network policies and security all the way to the virtual machine.

The virtual interface card makes Cisco VN-Link connections to the parent fabric interconnects, which allows virtual links to connect virtual NICs in virtual machines to virtual interfaces in the interconnect. In a Cisco Unified Computing System environment, virtual links then can be managed, network profiles applied, and interfaces dynamically reprovisioned as virtual machines move between servers in the system.

### Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card

The Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card is a high-performance, converged network adapter that provides acceleration for the various new operational modes introduced by server virtualization. It brings superior flexibility, performance, and bandwidth to the new generation of Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers.

The Cisco UCS VIC 1225 implements the Cisco Virtual Machine Fabric Extender (VM-FEX), which unifies virtual and physical networking into a single infrastructure. It provides virtual-machine visibility from the physical network and a consistent network operations model for physical and virtual servers. In virtualized environments, this highly configurable and self-virtualized adapter provides integrated, modular LAN interfaces on Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers. Additional features and capabilities include:

- Supports up to 256 PCIe virtual devices, either virtual network interface cards (vNICs) or virtual host bus adapters (vHBAs), with high I/O operations per second (IOPS), support for lossless Ethernet, and 20 Gbps to servers.
- PCIe Gen2 x16 helps assure optimal bandwidth to the host for network-intensive applications with a redundant path to the fabric interconnect.
- Half-height design reserves full-height slots in servers for Cisco certified third-party adapters.
- Centrally managed by Cisco UCS Manager with support for Microsoft Windows, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, SUSE Linux, VMware vSphere, and Citrix XenServer.

## Viewing Network Adapter Properties

### Before You Begin

- The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.
- A supported Virtual Interface Card (VIC) must be installed in the chassis and the server must be powered on.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, click an adapter in the table to display its properties.  
The resources of the selected adapter appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the **Adapter Cards** area, review the following information for the installed adapters:

Name	Description
<b>PCI Slot</b> column	The PCI slot in which the adapter is installed.
<b>Product Name</b> column	The product name for the adapter.
<b>Serial Number</b> column	The serial number for the adapter.
<b>Product ID</b> column	The product ID for the adapter.
<b>Vendor</b> column	The vendor for the adapter.
<b>CIMC Management Enabled</b> column	Whether the adapter is able to manage CIMC. This functionality depends on the type of adapter installed and how it is configured. For details, see the hardware installation guide for the type of server you are using.

- Step 6** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
- Step 7** In the **Adapter Card Properties** area, review the following information for the adapter:

Name	Description
<b>PCI Slot</b> field	The PCI slot in which the adapter is installed.
<b>Vendor</b> field	The vendor for the adapter.
<b>Product Name</b> field	The product name for the adapter.
<b>Product ID</b> field	The product ID for the adapter.
<b>Serial Number</b> field	The serial number for the adapter.
<b>Version ID</b> field	The version ID for the adapter.
<b>Hardware Revision</b> field	The hardware revision for the adapter.
<b>CIMC Management Enabled</b> field	If this field displays <b>yes</b> , then the adapter is functioning in Cisco Card Mode and passing CIMC management traffic through to the server CIMC.

Name	Description
<b>Configuration Pending</b> field	<p>If this field displays <b>yes</b>, the adapter configuration has changed in CIMC but these changes have not been communicated to the host operating system.</p> <p>To activate the changes, an administrator must reboot the adapter.</p>
<b>Description</b> field	The user-defined description for the adapter, if any.
<b>FIP Mode</b> field	Whether FCoE Initialization Protocol (FIP) mode is enabled. FIP mode ensures that the adapter is compatible with current FCoE standards.
<b>NIV Mode</b> field	<p>Whether Network Interface Virtualization (NIV) is enabled.</p> <p>If NIV mode is enabled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• vNICs and vHBAs can be assigned to a specific channel</li> <li>• vNICs and vHBAs can be associated with a port profile</li> <li>• vNICs can fail over to another vNIC if there are communication problems</li> </ul>

**Step 8** In the **External Ethernet Interfaces** area, review the following information for the adapter:

Name	Description
<b>ID</b> column	The uplink port ID.
<b>MAC Address</b> column	The MAC address of the uplink port.
<b>Link State</b> column	<p>The current operational state of the uplink port. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Fault</b></li> <li>• <b>Link Up</b></li> <li>• <b>Link Down</b></li> <li>• <b>SFP ID Error</b></li> <li>• <b>SFP Not Installed</b></li> <li>• <b>SFP Security Check Failed</b></li> <li>• <b>Unsupported SFP</b></li> </ul>
<b>Encap</b> column	The attribute added to the virtual network tag (VNTag) to support Network Interface Virtualization (NIV).

**Step 9** In the **Firmware** area, review the following information for the adapter:



Name	Description
<b>Running Version</b> field	The firmware version that is currently active.
<b>Backup Version</b> field	<p>The alternate firmware version installed on the adapter, if any. The backup version is not currently running. To activate it, administrators can click <b>Activate Firmware</b> in the <b>Actions</b> area.</p> <p><b>Note</b> When you install new firmware on the adapter, any existing backup version is deleted and the new firmware becomes the backup version. You must manually activate the new firmware if you want the adapter to run the new version.</p>
<b>Startup Version</b> field	The firmware version that will become active the next time the adapter is rebooted.
<b>Bootloader Version</b> field	The bootloader version associated with the adapter card.
<b>Status</b> field	<p>The status of the last firmware activation that was performed on this adapter.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The status is reset each time the adapter is rebooted.</p>

### What to Do Next

To view the properties of virtual NICs, VM FEXs, and virtual HBAs, see the following sections:

- [Viewing vNIC Properties, on page 89](#)
- [Viewing Virtual FEX Properties, on page 99](#)
- [Viewing vHBA Properties, on page 75](#)

# Configuring Adapter Properties

### Before You Begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- A supported Virtual Interface Card (VIC) must be installed in the chassis and the server must be powered on.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Set Adapter Properties**.  
The **Modify Adapter Properties** dialog box opens.
- Step 7** In the **Modify Adapter Properties** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Description</b> field	A user-defined description for the adapter. You can enter between 1 and 63 characters.
<b>Enable FIP Mode</b> check box	If checked, then FCoE Initialization Protocol (FIP) mode is enabled. FIP mode ensures that the adapter is compatible with current FCoE standards.  <b>Note</b> We recommend that you use this option only when explicitly directed to do so by a technical support representative.
<b>Enable NIV Mode</b> check box	If checked, then Network Interface Virtualization (NIV) mode is enabled. If NIV mode is enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• vNICs and vHBAs can be assigned to a specific channel</li> <li>• vNICs and vHBAs can be associated with a port profile</li> <li>• vNICs can fail over to another vNIC if there are communication problems</li> </ul>
<b>Number of VM FEX Interfaces</b> field	The number of VM FEX interfaces you want CIMC to create. Enter an integer between 0 and 112.  <b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.

- Step 8** Click **Save Changes**.

# Managing vHBAs

## Guidelines for Managing vHBAs

When managing vHBAs, consider the following guidelines and restrictions:

- The Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card and Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card provide two vHBAs (fc0 and fc1). You can create up to 16 additional vHBAs on these adapter cards.



### Note

If Network Interface Virtualization (NIV) mode is enabled for the adapter, you must assign a channel number to a vHBA when you create it.

- When using the Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card or Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card in an FCoE application, you must associate the vHBA with the FCoE VLAN. Follow the instructions in [Modifying vHBA Properties](#), on page 79 to assign the VLAN.
- After making configuration changes, you must reboot the host for settings to take effect.

## Viewing vHBA Properties

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA from the table.
- Step 7** Click **Properties** to open the **vHBA Properties** dialog box.
- Step 8** In the **General** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Name</b> field	The name of the virtual HBA. This name cannot be changed after the vHBA has been created.
<b>World Wide Node Name</b> field	The WWNN associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the WWNN, select <b>AUTO</b> . To specify a WWNN, click the second radio button and enter the WWNN in the corresponding field.

Name	Description
<b>World Wide Port Name</b> field	The WWPN associated with the vHBA.  To let the system generate the WWPN, select <b>AUTO</b> . To specify a WWPN, click the second radio button and enter the WWPN in the corresponding field.
<b>FC SAN Boot</b> check box	If checked, the vHBA can be used to perform a SAN boot.
<b>Enable Persistent LUN Binding</b> check box	If checked, any LUN ID associations are retained in memory until they are manually cleared.
<b>Uplink Port</b> field	The uplink port associated with the vHBA.  <b>Note</b> This value cannot be changed for the system-defined vHBAs fc0 and fc1.
<b>MAC Address</b> field	The MAC address associated with the vHBA.  To let the system generate the MAC address, select <b>AUTO</b> . To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.
<b>Default VLAN</b> field	If there is no default VLAN for this vHBA, click <b>NONE</b> . Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field.
<b>Class of Service</b> drop-down list	The CoS for the vHBA.  Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority.  <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.
<b>Rate Limit</b> field	The data rate limit for traffic on this vHBA, in Mbps.  If you want this vHBA to have an unlimited data rate, select <b>OFF</b> . Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter an integer between 1 and 10,000.  <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.
<b>PCIe Device Order</b> field	The order in which this vHBA will be used.  To let the system set the order, select <b>ANY</b> . To specify an order, select the second radio button and enter an integer between 0 and 17.
<b>EDTOV</b> field	The error detect timeout value (EDTOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that an error has occurred.  Enter an integer between 1,000 and 100,000. The default is 2,000 milliseconds.

Name	Description
<b>RATOV field</b>	The resource allocation timeout value (RATOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that a resource cannot be properly allocated.  Enter an integer between 5,000 and 100,000. The default is 10,000 milliseconds.
<b>Max Data Field Size field</b>	The maximum size of the Fibre Channel frame payload bytes that the vHBA supports.  Enter an integer between 256 and 2112.
<b>Channel Number field</b>	The channel number that will be assigned to this vHBA.  Enter an integer between 1 and 1,000. <b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.
<b>Port Profile drop-down list</b>	The port profile that should be associated with the vHBA, if any.  This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected. <b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.

**Step 9** In the **Error Recovery** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enable FCP Error Recovery</b> check box	If checked, the system uses FCP Sequence Level Error Recovery protocol (FC-TAPE).
<b>Link Down Timeout field</b>	The number of milliseconds the uplink port should be offline before it informs the system that the uplink port is down and fabric connectivity has been lost.  Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.
<b>Port Down I/O Retries field</b>	The number of times an I/O request to a port is returned because the port is busy before the system decides the port is unavailable.  Enter an integer between 0 and 255.
<b>Port Down Timeout field</b>	The number of milliseconds a remote Fibre Channel port should be offline before informing the SCSI upper layer that the port is unavailable.  Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.

**Step 10** In the **Fibre Channel Interrupt** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Interrupt Mode</b> drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MSI<sub>x</sub></b>—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option.</li> <li>• <b>MSI</b>—MSI only.</li> <li>• <b>INT<sub>x</sub></b>—PCI INT<sub>x</sub> interrupts.</li> </ul>

**Step 11** In the **Fibre Channel Port** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>I/O Throttle Count</b> field	The number of I/O operations that can be pending in the vHBA at one time. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024.
<b>LUNs per Target</b> field	The maximum number of LUNs that the driver will export. This is usually an operating system platform limitation. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024. The recommended value is 1024.

**Step 12** In the **Fibre Channel Port FLOGI** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>FLOGI Retries</b> field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to the fabric after the first failure.  To specify an unlimited number of retries, select the <b>INFINITE</b> radio button. Otherwise select the second radio button and enter an integer into the corresponding field.
<b>FLOGI Timeout</b> field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

**Step 13** In the **Fibre Channel Port PLOGI** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>PLOGI Retries</b> field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to a port after the first failure. Enter an integer between 0 and 255.

Name	Description
<b>PLOGI Timeout</b> field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

**Step 14** In the **SCSI I/O** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>CDB Transmit Queue Count</b> field	The number of SCSI I/O queue resources the system should allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 8.
<b>CDB Work Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each SCSI I/O queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 512.

**Step 15** In the **Receive/Transmit Queues** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>FC Work Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 128.
<b>FC Receive Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 128.

## Modifying vHBA Properties

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.

**Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.

**Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA from the table.

**Step 7** Click **Properties** to open the **vHBA Properties** dialog box.

**Step 8** In the **General** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Name</b> field	The name of the virtual HBA. This name cannot be changed after the vHBA has been created.
<b>World Wide Node Name</b> field	The WWNN associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the WWNN, select <b>AUTO</b> . To specify a WWNN, click the second radio button and enter the WWNN in the corresponding field.
<b>World Wide Port Name</b> field	The WWPN associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the WWPN, select <b>AUTO</b> . To specify a WWPN, click the second radio button and enter the WWPN in the corresponding field.
<b>FC SAN Boot</b> check box	If checked, the vHBA can be used to perform a SAN boot.
<b>Enable Persistent LUN Binding</b> check box	If checked, any LUN ID associations are retained in memory until they are manually cleared.
<b>Uplink Port</b> field	The uplink port associated with the vHBA. <b>Note</b> This value cannot be changed for the system-defined vHBAs fc0 and fc1.
<b>MAC Address</b> field	The MAC address associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the MAC address, select <b>AUTO</b> . To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.
<b>Default VLAN</b> field	If there is no default VLAN for this vHBA, click <b>NONE</b> . Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field.
<b>Class of Service</b> drop-down list	The CoS for the vHBA. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.



Name	Description
<b>Rate Limit</b> field	<p>The data rate limit for traffic on this vHBA, in Mbps.</p> <p>If you want this vHBA to have an unlimited data rate, select <b>OFF</b>. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter an integer between 1 and 10,000.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.</p>
<b>PCIe Device Order</b> field	<p>The order in which this vHBA will be used.</p> <p>To let the system set the order, select <b>ANY</b>. To specify an order, select the second radio button and enter an integer between 0 and 17.</p>
<b>EDTOV</b> field	<p>The error detect timeout value (EDTOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that an error has occurred.</p> <p>Enter an integer between 1,000 and 100,000. The default is 2,000 milliseconds.</p>
<b>RATOV</b> field	<p>The resource allocation timeout value (RATOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that a resource cannot be properly allocated.</p> <p>Enter an integer between 5,000 and 100,000. The default is 10,000 milliseconds.</p>
<b>Max Data Field Size</b> field	<p>The maximum size of the Fibre Channel frame payload bytes that the vHBA supports.</p> <p>Enter an integer between 256 and 2112.</p>
<b>Channel Number</b> field	<p>The channel number that will be assigned to this vHBA.</p> <p>Enter an integer between 1 and 1,000.</p> <p><b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.</p>
<b>Port Profile</b> drop-down list	<p>The port profile that should be associated with the vHBA, if any.</p> <p>This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected.</p> <p><b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.</p>

**Step 9** In the **Error Recovery** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enable FCP Error Recovery</b> check box	If checked, the system uses FCP Sequence Level Error Recovery protocol (FC-TAPE).

Name	Description
<b>Link Down Timeout</b> field	The number of milliseconds the uplink port should be offline before it informs the system that the uplink port is down and fabric connectivity has been lost.  Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.
<b>Port Down I/O Retries</b> field	The number of times an I/O request to a port is returned because the port is busy before the system decides the port is unavailable.  Enter an integer between 0 and 255.
<b>Port Down Timeout</b> field	The number of milliseconds a remote Fibre Channel port should be offline before informing the SCSI upper layer that the port is unavailable.  Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.

**Step 10** In the **Fibre Channel Interrupt** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Interrupt Mode</b> drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MSIx</b>—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option.</li> <li>• <b>MSI</b>—MSI only.</li> <li>• <b>INTx</b>—PCI INTx interrupts.</li> </ul>

**Step 11** In the **Fibre Channel Port** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>I/O Throttle Count</b> field	The number of I/O operations that can be pending in the vHBA at one time.  Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024.
<b>LUNs per Target</b> field	The maximum number of LUNs that the driver will export. This is usually an operating system platform limitation.  Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024. The recommended value is 1024.

**Step 12** In the **Fibre Channel Port FLOGI** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>FLOGI Retries</b> field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to the fabric after the first failure.  To specify an unlimited number of retries, select the <b>INFINITE</b> radio button. Otherwise select the second radio button and enter an integer into the corresponding field.
<b>FLOGI Timeout</b> field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again.  Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

**Step 13** In the **Fibre Channel Port PLOGI** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>PLOGI Retries</b> field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to a port after the first failure.  Enter an integer between 0 and 255.
<b>PLOGI Timeout</b> field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again.  Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

**Step 14** In the **SCSI I/O** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>CDB Transmit Queue Count</b> field	The number of SCSI I/O queue resources the system should allocate.  Enter an integer between 1 and 8.
<b>CDB Work Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each SCSI I/O queue.  Enter an integer between 64 and 512.

**Step 15** In the **Receive/Transmit Queues** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>FC Work Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue.  Enter an integer between 64 and 128.
<b>FC Receive Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue.  Enter an integer between 64 and 128.

**Step 16** Click **Save Changes**.

---

## Creating a vHBA

The adapter provides two permanent vHBAs. If NIV mode is enabled, you can create up to 16 additional vHBAs.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, choose one of these actions:
- To create a vHBA using default configuration settings, click **Add**.
  - To create a vHBA using the same configuration settings as an existing vHBA, select that vHBA and click **Clone**.

The **Add vHBA** dialog box appears.

- Step 7** In the **Add vHBA** dialog box, enter a name for the vHBA in the **Name** entry box.
- Step 8** Click **Add vHBA**.
- 

### What to Do Next

- Reboot the server to create the vHBA.
- If configuration changes are required, configure the new vHBA as described in [Modifying vHBA Properties](#), on page 79.

## Deleting a vHBA

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA from the table.  
**Note** You cannot delete either of the two default vHBAs, **fc0** or **fc1**.
- Step 7** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to confirm.
- 

## vHBA Boot Table

In the vHBA boot table, you can specify up to four LUNs from which the server can boot.

## Creating a Boot Table Entry

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA from the table.
- Step 7** Click **Boot Table** to open the **Boot Table** dialog box for the selected vHBA.
- Step 8** In the **Boot Table** dialog box, click **Add** to open the **Add Boot Entry** dialog box.
- Step 9** In the **Add Boot Entry** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Target WWPN</b> field	The World Wide Port Name (WWPN) that corresponds to the location of the boot image. Enter the WWPN in the format hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh.
<b>LUN ID</b> field	The LUN ID that corresponds to the location of the boot image. Enter an ID between 0 and 255.
<b>Add Boot Entry</b> button	Adds the specified location to the boot table.
<b>Reset Values</b> button	Clears the values currently entered in the fields.
<b>Cancel</b> button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

**Step 10** Click **Add Boot Entry**.

---

## Deleting a Boot Table Entry

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
  - Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
  - Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.
  - Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA from the table.
  - Step 7** Click **Boot Table** to open the **Boot Table** dialog box for the selected vHBA.
  - Step 8** In the **Boot Table** dialog box, click the entry to be deleted.
  - Step 9** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to confirm.
- 

## vHBA Persistent Binding

Persistent binding ensures that the system-assigned mapping of Fibre Channel targets is maintained after a reboot.

## Viewing Persistent Bindings

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA from the table.
- Step 7** Click **Persistent Bindings** to open the **Persistent Bindings** dialog box for the selected vHBA.
- Step 8** In the **Persistent Bindings** dialog box for the selected vHBA, review the following information:

Name	Description
<b>Index</b> column	The unique identifier for the binding.
<b>Target WWPN</b> column	The target World Wide Port Name with which the binding is associated.
<b>Host WWPN</b> column	The host World Wide Port Name with which the binding is associated.
<b>Bus ID</b> column	The bus ID with which the binding is associated.
<b>Target ID</b> column	The target ID on the host system with which the binding is associated.
<b>Rebuild Persistent Bindings</b> button	Clears all unused bindings and resets the ones that are in use.
<b>Close</b> button	Closes the dialog box and saves your changes.

- Step 9** Click **Close**.

## Rebuilding Persistent Bindings

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vHBAs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA from the table.
- Step 7** Click **Persistent Bindings** to open the **Persistent Bindings** dialog box for the selected vHBA.
- Step 8** In the **Persistent Bindings** dialog box for the selected vHBA, click **Rebuild Persistent Bindings**.
- Step 9** Click **Close**.
- 

## Managing vNICs

### Guidelines for Managing vNICs

When managing vNICs, consider the following guidelines and restrictions:

- The Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card and Cisco UCS VIC1225 Virtual Interface Card provide two default vNICs (eth0 and eth1). You can create up to 16 additional vNICs on these adapter cards.




---

**Note** If Network Interface Virtualization (NIV) mode is enabled for the adapter, you must assign a channel number to a vNIC when you create it.

---

- After making configuration changes, you must reboot the host for settings to take effect.



## Viewing vNIC Properties

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vNICs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Ethernet Interfaces** area, select a vNIC from the table.
- Step 7** Click **Properties** to open the **vNIC Properties** dialog box.
- Step 8** In the **General** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Name</b> field	The name for the virtual NIC. This name cannot be changed after the vNIC has been created.
<b>MTU</b> field	The maximum transmission unit, or packet size, that this vNIC accepts. Enter an integer between 1500 and 9000.
<b>Uplink Port</b> drop-down list	The uplink port associated with this vNIC. All traffic for this vNIC goes through this uplink port.
<b>MAC Address</b> field	The MAC address associated with the vNIC. To let the adapter select an available MAC address from its internal pool, select <b>Auto</b> . To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.
<b>Class of Service</b> drop-down list	The class of service to associate with traffic from this vNIC. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.
<b>Trust Host CoS</b> check box	Check this box if you want the vNIC to use the class of service provided by the host operating system.
<b>PCI Order</b> field	The order in which this vNIC will be used. To let the system set the order, select <b>Any</b> . To specify an order, select the second radio button and enter an integer between 0 and 17.

Name	Description
<b>Default VLAN</b> field	<p>If there is no default VLAN for this vNIC, click <b>NONE</b>. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.</p>
<b>VLAN Mode</b> drop-down list	<p>If you want to use VLAN trunking, select <b>TRUNK</b>. Otherwise, select <b>ACCESS</b>.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.</p>
<b>Rate Limit</b> field	<p>If you want this vNIC to have an unlimited data rate, select OFF. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a rate limit in the associated field.</p> <p>Enter an integer between 1 and 10,000 Mbps.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.</p>
<b>Enable PXE Boot</b> check box	Check this box if the vNIC can be used to perform a PXE boot.
<b>Channel Number</b> field	<p>Select the channel number that will be assigned to this vNIC.</p> <p><b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.</p>
<b>Port Profile</b> drop-down list	<p>Select the port profile that should be associated with the vNIC.</p> <p>This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected.</p> <p><b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.</p>
<b>Enable Uplink Failover</b> check box	<p>Check this box if traffic on this vNIC should fail over to the secondary interface if there are communication problems.</p> <p><b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.</p>
<b>Failback Timeout</b> field	<p>After a vNIC has started using its secondary interface, this setting controls how long the primary interface must be available before the system resumes using the primary interface for the vNIC.</p> <p>Enter a number of seconds between 0 and 600.</p> <p><b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.</p>

**Step 9** In the **Ethernet Interrupt** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Interrupt Count</b> field	The number of interrupt resources to allocate. In general, this value should be equal to the number of completion queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 514.
<b>Coalescing Time</b> field	The time to wait between interrupts or the idle period that must be encountered before an interrupt is sent. Enter an integer between 1 and 65535. To turn off interrupt coalescing, enter 0 (zero) in this field.
<b>Coalescing Type</b> drop-down list	This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MIN</b>—The system waits for the time specified in the <b>Coalescing Time</b> field before sending another interrupt event.</li> <li>• <b>IDLE</b>—The system does not send an interrupt until there is a period of no activity lasting as long as the time specified in the <b>Coalescing Time</b> field.</li> </ul>
<b>Interrupt Mode</b> drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MSI-X</b>—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option.</li> <li>• <b>MSI</b>—MSI only.</li> <li>• <b>INTx</b>—PCI INTx interrupts.</li> </ul>

**Step 10** In the **Ethernet Receive Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Receive Queue Count</b> field	The number of receive queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
<b>Receive Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

**Step 11** In the **Ethernet Transmit Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Transmit Queue Count</b> field	The number of transmit queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.

Name	Description
<b>Transmit Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

**Step 12** In the **Completion Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Completion Queue Count</b> field	The number of completion queue resources to allocate. In general, the number of completion queue resources you should allocate is equal to the number of transmit queue resources plus the number of receive queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 512.
<b>Completion Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each completion queue. This value cannot be changed.

**Step 13** In the **TCP Offload** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enable TCP Segmentation Offload</b> check box	If checked, the CPU sends large TCP packets to the hardware to be segmented. This option may reduce CPU overhead and increase throughput rate. If cleared, the CPU segments large packets. <b>Note</b> This option is also known as Large Send Offload (LSO).
<b>Enable TCP Rx Offload Checksum Validation</b> check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packet checksums to the hardware for validation. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU validates all packet checksums.
<b>Enable TCP Tx Offload Checksum Generation</b> check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packets to the hardware so that the checksum can be calculated. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU calculates all packet checksums.
<b>Enable Large Receive</b> check box	If checked, the hardware reassembles all segmented packets before sending them to the CPU. This option may reduce CPU utilization and increase inbound throughput. If cleared, the CPU processes all large packets.

**Step 14** In the **Receive Side Scaling** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enable TCP Receive Side Scaling</b> check box	Receive Side Scaling (RSS) distributes network receive processing across multiple CPUs in multiprocessor systems.  If checked, network receive processing is shared across processors whenever possible.  If cleared, network receive processing is always handled by a single processor even if additional processors are available.
<b>Enable IPv4 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled on IPv4 networks.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv4 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv4 networks.
<b>Enable IPv6 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled on IPv6 networks.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv6 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.
<b>Enable IPv6 Extension RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for IPv6 extensions.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv6 Extension RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.

## Modifying vNIC Properties

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vNICs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Ethernet Interfaces** area, select a vNIC from the table.
- Step 7** Click **Properties** to open the **vNIC Properties** dialog box.
- Step 8** In the **General** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Name</b> field	The name for the virtual NIC. This name cannot be changed after the vNIC has been created.
<b>MTU</b> field	The maximum transmission unit, or packet size, that this vNIC accepts. Enter an integer between 1500 and 9000.
<b>Uplink Port</b> drop-down list	The uplink port associated with this vNIC. All traffic for this vNIC goes through this uplink port.
<b>MAC Address</b> field	The MAC address associated with the vNIC. To let the adapter select an available MAC address from its internal pool, select <b>Auto</b> . To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.
<b>Class of Service</b> drop-down list	The class of service to associate with traffic from this vNIC. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.
<b>Trust Host CoS</b> check box	Check this box if you want the vNIC to use the class of service provided by the host operating system.
<b>PCI Order</b> field	The order in which this vNIC will be used. To let the system set the order, select <b>Any</b> . To specify an order, select the second radio button and enter an integer between 0 and 17.
<b>Default VLAN</b> field	If there is no default VLAN for this vNIC, click <b>NONE</b> . Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field. <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.
<b>VLAN Mode</b> drop-down list	If you want to use VLAN trunking, select <b>TRUNK</b> . Otherwise, select <b>ACCESS</b> . <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.
<b>Rate Limit</b> field	If you want this vNIC to have an unlimited data rate, select OFF. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a rate limit in the associated field. Enter an integer between 1 and 10,000 Mbps. <b>Note</b> This option cannot be used in NIV mode.
<b>Enable PXE Boot</b> check box	Check this box if the vNIC can be used to perform a PXE boot.

Name	Description
<b>Channel Number</b> field	Select the channel number that will be assigned to this vNIC.  <b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.
<b>Port Profile</b> drop-down list	Select the port profile that should be associated with the vNIC. This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected.  <b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.
<b>Enable Uplink Failover</b> check box	Check this box if traffic on this vNIC should fail over to the secondary interface if there are communication problems.  <b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.
<b>Failback Timeout</b> field	After a vNIC has started using its secondary interface, this setting controls how long the primary interface must be available before the system resumes using the primary interface for the vNIC. Enter a number of seconds between 0 and 600.  <b>Note</b> NIV mode is required for this option.

**Step 9** In the **Ethernet Interrupt** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Interrupt Count</b> field	The number of interrupt resources to allocate. In general, this value should be equal to the number of completion queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 514.
<b>Coalescing Time</b> field	The time to wait between interrupts or the idle period that must be encountered before an interrupt is sent. Enter an integer between 1 and 65535. To turn off interrupt coalescing, enter 0 (zero) in this field.
<b>Coalescing Type</b> drop-down list	This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MIN</b>—The system waits for the time specified in the <b>Coalescing Time</b> field before sending another interrupt event.</li> <li>• <b>IDLE</b>—The system does not send an interrupt until there is a period of no activity lasting as least as long as the time specified in the <b>Coalescing Time</b> field.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Interrupt Mode</b> drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MSI-X</b>—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option.</li> <li>• <b>MSI</b>—MSI only.</li> <li>• <b>INTx</b>—PCI INTx interrupts.</li> </ul>

**Step 10** In the **Ethernet Receive Queue** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Receive Queue Count</b> field	The number of receive queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
<b>Receive Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

**Step 11** In the **Ethernet Transmit Queue** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Transmit Queue Count</b> field	The number of transmit queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
<b>Transmit Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

**Step 12** In the **Completion Queue** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Completion Queue Count</b> field	The number of completion queue resources to allocate. In general, the number of completion queue resources you should allocate is equal to the number of transmit queue resources plus the number of receive queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 512.
<b>Completion Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each completion queue. This value cannot be changed.

**Step 13** In the **TCP Offload** area, update the following fields:



Name	Description
<b>Enable TCP Segmentation Offload</b> check box	<p>If checked, the CPU sends large TCP packets to the hardware to be segmented. This option may reduce CPU overhead and increase throughput rate.</p> <p>If cleared, the CPU segments large packets.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option is also known as Large Send Offload (LSO).</p>
<b>Enable TCP Rx Offload Checksum Validation</b> check box	<p>If checked, the CPU sends all packet checksums to the hardware for validation. This option may reduce CPU overhead.</p> <p>If cleared, the CPU validates all packet checksums.</p>
<b>Enable TCP Tx Offload Checksum Generation</b> check box	<p>If checked, the CPU sends all packets to the hardware so that the checksum can be calculated. This option may reduce CPU overhead.</p> <p>If cleared, the CPU calculates all packet checksums.</p>
<b>Enable Large Receive</b> check box	<p>If checked, the hardware reassembles all segmented packets before sending them to the CPU. This option may reduce CPU utilization and increase inbound throughput.</p> <p>If cleared, the CPU processes all large packets.</p>

**Step 14** In the **Receive Side Scaling** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enable TCP Receive Side Scaling</b> check box	<p>Receive Side Scaling (RSS) distributes network receive processing across multiple CPUs in multiprocessor systems.</p> <p>If checked, network receive processing is shared across processors whenever possible.</p> <p>If cleared, network receive processing is always handled by a single processor even if additional processors are available.</p>
<b>Enable IPv4 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled on IPv4 networks.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv4 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv4 networks.
<b>Enable IPv6 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled on IPv6 networks.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv6 RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.
<b>Enable IPv6 Extension RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for IPv6 extensions.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv6 Extension RSS</b> check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.

**Step 15** Click **Save Changes**.

---

## Creating a vNIC

The adapter provides two permanent vNICs. You can create up to 16 additional vNICs.

### Procedure

---

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.

**Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.

**Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.

If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.

**Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vNICs** tab.

**Step 6** In the **Host Ethernet Interfaces** area, choose one of these actions:

- To create a vNIC using default configuration settings, click **Add**.
- To create a vNIC using the same configuration settings as an existing vNIC, select that vNIC and click **Clone**.

The **Add vNIC** dialog box appears.

**Step 7** In the **Add vNIC** dialog box, enter a name for the vNIC in the **Name** entry box.

**Step 8** (Optional) In the **Add vNIC** dialog box, enter a channel number for the vNIC in the **Channel Number** entry box.

**Note** If NIV is enabled on the adapter, you must assign a channel number for the vNIC when you create it.

**Step 9** Click **Add vNIC**.

---

### What to Do Next

If configuration changes are required, configure the new vNIC as described in [Modifying vNIC Properties, on page 93](#).

## Deleting a vNIC

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **vNICs** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Host Ethernet Interfaces** area, select a vNIC from the table.  
**Note** You cannot delete either of the two default vNICs, **eth0** or **eth1**.
- Step 7** Click **Delete** and click **OK** to confirm.
- 

## Managing VM FEX

### Virtual Machine Fabric Extender

Cisco Virtual Machine Fabric Extender (VM FEX) extends the (prestandard) IEEE 802.1Qbh port extender architecture to virtual machines. In this architecture, each VM interface is provided with a virtual Peripheral Component Interconnect Express (PCIe) device and a virtual port on a switch.

## Viewing Virtual FEX Properties

### Before You Begin

- The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.
- A supported Virtual Interface Card (VIC) must be installed in the chassis and the server must be powered on.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.

If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.

**Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **VM FEXs** tab.

**Step 6** In the Virtual FEXs area, review the following information:

Name	Description
<b>Properties</b> button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to view the properties for the selected VM FEX.
<b>Name</b> column	The name of the VM FEX.
<b>MTU</b> column	The maximum transmission unit, or packet size, that this VM FEX accepts.
<b>CoS</b> column	If enabled, the VM FEX uses the class of service provided by the host operating system.
<b>VLAN</b> column	The VLAN associated with the VM FEX.
<b>VLAN Mode</b> column	The mode for the associated VLAN.
<b>Uplink Failover</b> column	If NIV mode is enabled for the adapter, this column displays whether traffic on this VM FEX will fail over to a secondary interface if the primary interface fails.

**Step 7** In the Virtual FEXs area, select a VM FEX from the table.

**Step 8** Click **Properties** to open the **VM FEX Properties** dialog box for the selected VM FEX.

**Step 9** In the **General Properties** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Name</b> field	The name of the VM FEX.
<b>MTU</b> field	The maximum transmission unit, or packet size, that this VM FEX accepts.
<b>Trust Host CoS</b> field	If enabled, the VM FEX uses the class of service provided by the host operating system.
<b>PCI Order</b> field	The order in which this VM FEX will be used, if any.
<b>Default VLAN</b> field	The VLAN associated with the VM FEX.
<b>Rate Limit</b> field	The data rate limit associated with this VM FEX, if any.
<b>PXE Boot</b> field	Whether PXE boot is enabled or disabled for this VM FEX.

**Step 10** In the **Ethernet Interrupt** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Interrupt Count</b> field	The number of interrupt resources allocated to this VM FEX.
<b>Coalescing Time</b> field	The time CIMC waits between interrupts or the idle period that must be encountered before an interrupt is sent.
<b>Coalescing Type</b> field	This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MIN</b>—The system waits for the time specified in the <b>Coalescing Time</b> field before sending another interrupt event.</li> <li>• <b>IDLE</b>—The system does not send an interrupt until there is a period of no activity lasting as least as long as the time specified in the <b>Coalescing Time</b> field.</li> </ul>
<b>Interrupt Mode</b> field	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MSIx</b>—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension.</li> <li>• <b>MSI</b>—MSI only.</li> <li>• <b>INTx</b>—PCI INTx interrupts.</li> </ul>

**Step 11** In the **Ethernet Receive Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Receive Queue Count</b> field	The number of receive queue resources allocated to this VM FEX.
<b>Receive Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue.

**Step 12** In the **Ethernet Transmit Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Transmit Queue Count</b> field	The number of transmit queue resources allocated to this VM FEX.
<b>Transmit Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue.

**Step 13** In the **Completion Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Completion Queue Count</b> field	The number of completion queue resources allocated to this VM FEX.

Name	Description
<b>Completion Queue Ring Size</b> field	The number of descriptors in each completion queue.

**Step 14** In the **TCP Offload** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enable TCP Segmentation Offload</b> field	If enabled, the CPU sends large TCP packets to the hardware to be segmented. If disabled, the CPU segments large packets.  <b>Note</b> This option is also known as Large Send Offload (LSO).
<b>Enable TCP Rx Offload Checksum Validation</b> field	If enabled, the CPU sends all packet checksums to the hardware for validation. If disabled, the CPU validates all packet checksums.
<b>Enable TCP Tx Offload Checksum Generation</b> field	If enabled, the CPU sends all packets to the hardware so that the checksum can be calculated. If disabled, the CPU calculates all packet checksums.
<b>Enable Large Receive</b> field	If enabled, the hardware reassembles all segmented packets before sending them to the CPU. If disabled, the CPU processes all large packets.

**Step 15** In the **Receive Side Scaling** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enable TCP Receive Side Scaling</b> field	Receive Side Scaling (RSS) distributes network receive processing across multiple CPUs in multiprocessor systems.  If enabled, network receive processing is shared across processors whenever possible. If disabled, network receive processing is always handled by a single processor even if additional processors are available.
<b>Enable IPv4 RSS</b> field	If enabled, RSS is enabled on IPv4 networks.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv4 RSS</b> field	If enabled, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv4 networks.
<b>Enable IPv6 RSS</b> field	If enabled, RSS is enabled on IPv6 networks.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv6 RSS</b> field	If enabled, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.
<b>Enable IPv6 Extension RSS</b> field	If enabled, RSS is enabled for IPv6 extensions.
<b>Enable TCP-IPv6 Extension RSS</b> field	If enabled, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.

# Backing Up and Restoring the Adapter Configuration

## Exporting the Adapter Configuration

The adapter configuration can be exported as an XML file to a TFTP server.

### Before You Begin

Obtain the TFTP server IP address.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Export Configuration**.  
The **Export Adapter Configuration** dialog box opens.
- Step 7** In the **Export Adapter Configuration** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>TFTP Server IP Address</b> field	The IP address of the TFTP server to which the adapter configuration file will be exported.
<b>Path and Filename</b> field	The path and filename CIMC should use when exporting the file to the TFTP server.
- Step 8** Click **Export Configuration**.

## Importing the Adapter Configuration

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Import Configuration**.  
The **Import Adapter Configuration** dialog box opens.
- Step 7** In the **Import Adapter Configuration** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>TFTP Server IP Address</b> field	The IP address of the TFTP server on which the adapter configuration file resides.
<b>Path and Filename</b> field	The path and filename of the configuration file on the TFTP server.

- Step 8** Click **Import Configuration**.  
The adapter downloads the configuration file from the specified path on the TFTP server at the specified IP address. The configuration will be installed during the next server reboot.

### What to Do Next

Reboot the server to apply the imported configuration.

## Restoring Adapter Defaults

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.



- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Reset To Defaults** and click **OK** to confirm.
- 

# Managing Adapter Firmware

## Adapter Firmware

A Cisco UCS C-Series network adapter contains the following firmware components:

- Adapter firmware—The main operating firmware, consisting of an active and a backup image, can be installed from the CIMC GUI or CLI interface or from the Host Upgrade Utility (HUU). You can upload a firmware image from either a local file system or a TFTP server.
- Bootloader firmware—The bootloader firmware cannot be installed from the CIMC GUI or CLI. You can install this firmware using the Host Upgrade Utility.

## Installing Adapter Firmware From a Local File

### Before You Begin

Store the adapter firmware file in the file system of the managing computer.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Install Firmware** to open the **Install Adapter Firmware** dialog box.
- Step 7** In the **Install Adapter Firmware** dialog box, select **Install from local file**, then click **Next**.
- Step 8** Click **Browse...** and locate the adapter firmware file.
- Step 9** Click **Install Firmware**.
- 

### What to Do Next

To activate the new firmware, see *Activating Adapter Firmware*.

## Installing Adapter Firmware From a TFTP Server

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
- Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
- Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Install Firmware** to open the **Install Adapter Firmware** dialog box.
- Step 7** In the **Install Adapter Firmware** dialog box, select **Install from TFTP server**, then click **Next**.
- Step 8** In the **Install Adapter Firmware** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>TFTP Server IP Address</b> field	The IP address of the TFTP server on which the adapter configuration file resides.
<b>Path and Filename</b> field	The path and filename of the configuration file on the TFTP server.
<b>Back</b> button	Click this button if you want to specify a local path for the firmware package.
<b>Install Firmware</b> button	Click this button to install the selected firmware package in the adapter's backup memory slot.
<b>Close</b> button	Click this button to close the wizard without making any changes to the firmware versions stored on the server.

- Step 9** Click **Install Firmware**.

### What to Do Next

To activate the new firmware, see *Activating Adapter Firmware*.

## Activating Adapter Firmware

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
  - Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
  - Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
  - Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Activate Firmware** to open the **Activate Adapter Firmware** dialog box.
  - Step 7** In the **Activate Adapter Firmware** dialog box, select the image to run the next time the firmware starts up.
  - Step 8** Click **Activate Adapter Firmware**.
- 

## Resetting the Adapter

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
  - Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Adapter Cards** area, select the adapter card.  
If the server is powered on, the resources of the selected adapter card appear in the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area.
  - Step 5** In the tabbed menu below the **Adapter Cards** area, click the **General** tab.
  - Step 6** In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Reset** and click **Yes** to confirm.  
**Note** Resetting the adapter also resets the host.
-





# CHAPTER 10

## Configuring Communication Services

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Configuring HTTP, page 109](#)
- [Configuring SSH, page 110](#)
- [Configuring XML API, page 111](#)
- [Configuring IPMI, page 112](#)
- [Configuring SNMP, page 113](#)

## Configuring HTTP

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.
- Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **Communication Services** tab.
- Step 4** In the **HTTP Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>HTTP/S Enabled</b> check box	Whether HTTP and HTTPS are enabled on the CIMC.
<b>Redirect HTTP to HTTPS Enabled</b> check box	If enabled, all attempts to communicate via HTTP are redirected to the equivalent HTTPS address.  We strongly recommend that you enable this option if you enable HTTP.
<b>HTTP Port</b> field	The port to use for HTTP communication. The default is 80.

Name	Description
<b>HTTPS Port</b> field	The port to use for HTTPS communication. The default is 443
<b>Session Timeout</b> field	The number of seconds to wait between HTTP requests before the CIMC times out and terminates the session. Enter an integer between 60 and 10,800. The default is 1,800 seconds.
<b>Max Sessions</b> field	The maximum number of concurrent HTTP and HTTPS sessions allowed on the CIMC. This value may not be changed.
<b>Active Sessions</b> field	The number of HTTP and HTTPS sessions currently running on the CIMC.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## Configuring SSH

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure SSH.

### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.

**Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **Communication Services** tab.

**Step 4** In the **SSH Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>SSH Enabled</b> check box	Whether SSH is enabled on the CIMC.
<b>SSH Port</b> field	The port to use for secure shell access. The default is 22.
<b>SSH Timeout</b> field	The number of seconds to wait before the system considers an SSH request to have timed out. Enter an integer between 60 and 10,800. The default is 1,800 seconds.
<b>Max Sessions</b> field	The maximum number of concurrent SSH sessions allowed on the CIMC. This value may not be changed.

Name	Description
Active Sessions field	The number of SSH sessions currently running on the CIMC.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

---

## Configuring XML API

### XML API for CIMC

The Cisco CIMC XML application programming interface (API) is a programmatic interface to CIMC for a C-Series Rack-Mount Server. The API accepts XML documents through HTTP or HTTPS.

For detailed information about the XML API, see *Cisco UCS Rack-Mount Servers CIMC XML API Programmer's Guide*.

### Enabling the XML API

#### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

#### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.
- Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **Communication Services** tab.
- Step 4** In the **XML API Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
XML API Enabled check box	Whether API access is allowed on this server.
Max Sessions field	The maximum number of concurrent API sessions allowed on the CIMC. This value may not be changed.
Active Sessions field	The number of API sessions currently running on the CIMC.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

---

# Configuring IPMI

## IPMI Over LAN

Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) defines the protocols for interfacing with a service processor embedded in a server platform. This service processor is called a Baseboard Management Controller (BMC) and resides on the server motherboard. The BMC links to a main processor and other on-board elements using a simple serial bus.

During normal operations, IPMI lets a server operating system obtain information about system health and control system hardware. For example, IPMI enables the monitoring of sensors, such as temperature, fan speeds and voltages, for proactive problem detection. If server temperature rises above specified levels, the server operating system can direct the BMC to increase fan speed or reduce processor speed to address the problem.

## Configuring IPMI over LAN

Configure IPMI over LAN when you want to manage the CIMC with IPMI messages.

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.
- Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **Communication Services** tab.
- Step 4** In the **IPMI over LAN Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enabled</b> check box	Whether IPMI access is allowed on this server.



Name	Description
<b>Privilege Level Limit</b> drop-down list	<p>The highest privilege level that can be assigned to an IPMI session on this server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>read-only</b>—IPMI users can view information but cannot make any changes. If you select this option, IPMI users with the "Administrator", "Operator", or "User" user roles can only create read-only IPMI sessions, regardless of their other IPMI privileges.</li> <li>• <b>user</b>—IPMI users can perform some functions but cannot perform administrative tasks. If you select this option, IPMI users with the "Administrator" or "Operator" user role can create user and read-only sessions on this server.</li> <li>• <b>admin</b>—IPMI users can perform all available actions. If you select this option, IPMI users with the "Administrator" user role can create admin, user, and read-only sessions on this server.</li> </ul>
<b>Encryption Key</b> field	The IPMI encryption key to use for IPMI communications.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## Configuring SNMP

### SNMP

The Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers support the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) for viewing server configuration and status and for sending fault and alert information by SNMP traps. For information on Management Information Base (MIB) files supported by CIMC, see the *MIB Quick Reference for Cisco UCS* at this URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/unified\\_computing/ucs/sw/mib/reference/UCS\\_MIBRef.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/unified_computing/ucs/sw/mib/reference/UCS_MIBRef.html).

## Configuring SNMP Properties

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.
- Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.
- Step 4** In the **SNMP Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Enabled</b> check box	Whether this server sends SNMP traps to the designated host. <b>Note</b> After you check this check box, you need to click <b>Save Changes</b> before you can configure SNMP users or traps.
<b>SNMP Port</b> field	The port the server uses to communicate with the SNMP host. This value cannot be changed.
<b>Access Community String</b> field	The default SNMP v1 or v2c community name or SNMP v3 username CIMC includes on any trap messages it sends to the SNMP host. Enter a string up to 18 characters.
<b>System Contact</b> field	The system contact person responsible for the SNMP implementation. Enter a string up to 64 characters, such as an email address or a name and telephone number.
<b>System Location</b> field	The location of the host on which the SNMP agent (server) runs. Enter a string up to 64 characters.

- Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## What to Do Next

Configure SNMP trap settings as described in [Configuring SNMP Trap Settings](#), on page 114.

# Configuring SNMP Trap Settings

## Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.
- Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Common Trap Destination Settings** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Trap Community String</b> field	The name of the SNMP community group to which trap information should be sent.
<b>SNMP Version</b> drop-down list	The SNMP version and model used for the trap. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>V1</b></li> <li>• <b>V2</b></li> <li>• <b>V3</b></li> </ul>
<b>Type</b> field	If you select <b>V2</b> for the version, this is the type of trap to send. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Trap</b></li> <li>• <b>Inform</b></li> </ul>

- Step 5** In the **Trap Destinations** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>ID</b> column	The trap destination ID. This value cannot be modified.
<b>Enabled</b> column	For each SNMP trap destination that you want to use, check the associated check box in this column.
<b>Trap Destination IP Address</b> column	The IP address to which SNMP trap information is sent.

**Tip** To change the settings for a trap or to send a test trap message, administrators can click the trap row in the table.

- Step 6** Click **Save Changes**.

## Sending a Test SNMP Trap Message

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Event Management**.
- Step 3** In the **Event Management** pane, click the **Trap Settings** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Trap Destinations** area, click the row of the desired SNMP trap destination.  
The **Traps Details** dialog box opens.
- Step 5** Click **Send SNMP trap**.  
An SNMPv1 test trap message is sent to the trap destination.

**Note** The trap must be configured and enabled in order to send a test message.

---

## Managing SNMPv3 Users

### Before You Begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.
- SNMP must be enabled.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.
- Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.
- Step 4** In the **SNMPV3 Users** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Add</b> button	Click an available row in the table then click this button to add a new SNMP user.
<b>Modify</b> button	Select the user you want to change in the table then click this button to modify the selected SNMP user.
<b>Delete</b> button	Select the user you want to delete in the table then click this button to delete the selected SNMP user.

Name	Description
<b>ID</b> column	The system-assigned identifier for the SNMP user.
<b>Name</b> column	The SNMP user name.
<b>Auth Type</b> column	The user authentication type.
<b>Privacy Type</b> column	The user privacy type.

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

## Configuring SNMPv3 Users

### Before You Begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.
- SNMP must be enabled.

### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.

**Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.

**Step 4** In the **SNMPV3 Users** area, perform one of the following actions:

- Select an existing user from the table and click **Modify**.
- Click **Add** to create a new user.

**Note** If the buttons are disabled, enable SNMP and click **Save Changes**.

**Step 5** In the **SNMPV3 User Details** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>ID</b> field	The unique identifier for the user. This field cannot be changed.
<b>Name</b> field	<p>The SNMP username.</p> <p>Enter between 1 and 31 characters or spaces.</p> <p><b>Note</b> CIMC automatically trims leading or trailing spaces.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Security Level</b> drop-down list	<p>The security level for this user. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>no auth, no priv</b>—The user does not require an authorization or privacy password.</li> <li>• <b>auth, no priv</b>—The user requires an authorization password but not a privacy password. If you select this option, CIMC enables the Auth fields described below.</li> <li>• <b>auth, priv</b>—The user requires both an authorization password and a privacy password. If you select this option, CIMC enables the Auth and Privacy fields.</li> </ul>
<b>Auth Type</b> field	<p>The authorization type. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MD5</b></li> <li>• <b>SHA</b></li> </ul>
<b>Auth Password</b> field	<p>The authorization password for this SNMP user. Enter between 8 and 64 characters or spaces.</p> <p><b>Note</b> CIMC automatically trims leading or trailing spaces.</p>
<b>Confirm Auth Password</b> field	The authorization password again for confirmation purposes.
<b>Privacy Type</b> field	<p>The privacy type. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>DES</b></li> <li>• <b>AES</b></li> </ul>
<b>Privacy Password</b> field	<p>The privacy password for this SNMP user. Enter between 8 and 64 characters or spaces.</p> <p><b>Note</b> CIMC automatically trims leading or trailing spaces.</p>
<b>Confirm Privacy Password</b> field	The authorization password again for confirmation purposes.

**Step 6** Click **Save Changes**.



## CHAPTER 11

# Managing Certificates

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Managing the Server Certificate, page 119](#)
- [Generating a Certificate Signing Request, page 119](#)
- [Creating a Self-Signed Certificate, page 120](#)
- [Uploading a Server Certificate, page 122](#)

## Managing the Server Certificate

You can generate a certificate signing request (CSR) to obtain a new certificate, and you can upload the new certificate to the CIMC to replace the current server certificate. The server certificate may be signed either by a public Certificate Authority (CA), such as Verisign, or by your own certificate authority.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** Generate the CSR from the CIMC.
- Step 2** Submit the CSR file to a certificate authority that will issue and sign your certificate. If your organization generates its own self-signed certificates, you can use the CSR file to generate a self-signed certificate.
- Step 3** Upload the new certificate to the CIMC.
- Note** The uploaded certificate must be created from a CSR generated by the CIMC. Do not upload a certificate that was not created by this method.
- 

## Generating a Certificate Signing Request

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure certificates.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Certificate Management**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click the **Generate New Certificate Signing Request** link.  
The **Generate New Certificate Signing Request** dialog box appears.
- Step 4** In the **Generate New Certificate Signing Request** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>Common Name</b> field	The fully qualified hostname of the CIMC.
<b>Organization Name</b> field	The organization requesting the certificate.
<b>Organization Unit</b> field	The organizational unit.
<b>Locality</b> field	The city or town in which the company requesting the certificate is headquartered.
<b>State Name</b> field	The state or province in which the company requesting the certificate is headquartered.
<b>Country Code</b> drop-down list	The country in which the company resides.
<b>Email</b> field	The email contact at the company.

- Step 5** Click **Generate CSR**.  
The **Opening csr.txt** dialog box appears.
- Step 6** Perform any one of the following steps to manage the CSR file, csr.txt:
- Click **Open With** to view csr.txt.
  - Click **Save File** and then click **OK** to save csr.txt to your local machine.

## What to Do Next

Submit the CSR file to a certificate authority that will issue and sign your certificate. If your organization generates its own self-signed certificates, you can use the CSR file to generate a self-signed certificate.

# Creating a Self-Signed Certificate

As an alternative to using a public Certificate Authority (CA) to generate and sign a server certificate, you can operate your own CA and sign your own certificates. This section shows commands for creating a CA and generating a server certificate using the OpenSSL certificate server running on Linux. For detailed information about OpenSSL, see <http://www.openssl.org>.



**Note**

These commands are to be entered on a Linux server with the OpenSSL package, not in the CIMC CLI.

**Before You Begin**

Obtain and install a certificate server software package on a server within your organization.

**Procedure**

	Command or Action	Purpose
<b>Step 1</b>	<b>openssl genrsa -out <i>CA_keyfilename</i> <i>keysize</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre># openssl genrsa -out ca.key 1024</pre>	This command generates an RSA private key that will be used by the CA. <b>Note</b> To allow the CA to access the key without user input, do not use the -des3 option for this command. The specified file name contains an RSA key of the specified key size.
<b>Step 2</b>	<b>openssl req -new -x509 -days <i>numdays</i> -key <i>CA_keyfilename</i> -out <i>CA_certfilename</i></b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre># openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -key ca.key -out ca.crt</pre>	This command generates a new self-signed certificate for the CA using the specified key. The certificate is valid for the specified period. The command prompts the user for additional certificate information. The certificate server is an active CA.
<b>Step 3</b>	<b>echo "nsCertType = server" &gt; openssl.conf</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre># echo "nsCertType = server" &gt; openssl.conf</pre>	This command adds a line to the OpenSSL configuration file to designate the certificate as a server-only certificate. This designation is a defense against a man-in-the-middle attack, in which an authorized client attempts to impersonate the server. The OpenSSL configuration file openssl.conf contains the statement "nsCertType = server".
<b>Step 4</b>	<b>openssl x509 -req -days <i>numdays</i> -in <i>CSR_filename</i> -CA <i>CA_certfilename</i> -set_serial 04 -CAkey <i>CA_keyfilename</i> -out <i>server_certfilename</i> -extfile openssl.conf</b>  <b>Example:</b> <pre># openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in csr.txt -CA ca.crt -set_serial 04 -CAkey ca.key -out myserver05.crt -extfile openssl.conf</pre>	This command directs the CA to use your CSR file to generate a server certificate. Your server certificate is contained in the output file.

This example shows how to create a CA and to generate a server certificate signed by the new CA. These commands are entered on a Linux server running OpenSSL.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl genrsa -out ca.key 1024
Generating RSA private key, 1024 bit long modulus
.....++++++
```

```

.....++++++
e is 65537 (0x10001)
# /usr/bin/openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -key ca.key -out ca.crt
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated
into your certificate request.
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a
DN.
There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
For some fields there will be a default value,
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
-----
Country Name (2 letter code) [GB]:US
State or Province Name (full name) [Berkshire]:California
Locality Name (eg, city) [Newbury]:San Jose
Organization Name (eg, company) [My Company Ltd]:Example Incorporated
Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:Unit A
Common Name (eg, your name or your server's hostname) []:example.com
Email Address []:admin@example.com
# echo "nsCertType = server" > openssl.conf
# /usr/bin/openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in csr.txt -CA ca.crt -set_serial 01 -CAkey ca.key -out server.crt
-extfile openssl.conf
Signature ok
subject=/C=US/ST=California/L=San Jose/O=Example Inc./OU=Unit
A/CN=example.com/emailAddress=john@example.com
Getting CA Private Key
#

```

### What to Do Next

Upload the new certificate to the CIMC.

## Uploading a Server Certificate

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to upload a certificate.

The certificate file to be uploaded must reside on a locally accessible file system.



#### Note

You must first generate a CSR using the CIMC Certificate Management menu, and you must use that CSR to obtain the certificate for uploading. Do not upload a certificate that was not obtained by this method.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Certificate Management**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Upload Server Certificate**.

The **Upload Certificate** dialog box appears.

**Step 4** In the **Upload Certificate** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
<b>File</b> field	The certificate file you want to upload.
<b>Browse</b> button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to navigate to the appropriate certificate file.

**Step 5** Click **Upload Certificate**.

---





## CHAPTER 12

# Configuring Platform Event Filters

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Platform Event Filters, page 125](#)
- [Enabling Platform Event Alerts, page 125](#)
- [Disabling Platform Event Alerts, page 126](#)
- [Configuring Platform Event Filters, page 126](#)
- [Configuring SNMP Trap Settings, page 127](#)
- [Sending a Test SNMP Trap Message, page 128](#)
- [Interpreting Platform Event Traps, page 129](#)

## Platform Event Filters

A platform event filter (PEF) can trigger an action and generate an alert when a critical hardware-related event occurs. For each PEF, you can choose the action to be taken (or take no action) when a platform event occurs. You can also choose to generate and send an alert when a platform event occurs. Alerts are sent as an SNMP trap, so you must configure an SNMP trap destination before the alerts can be sent.

You can globally enable or disable the generation of platform event alerts. When disabled, alerts are not sent even if PEFs are configured to send them.

## Enabling Platform Event Alerts

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to enable platform event alerts.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Event Management**.
  - Step 3** In the **Event Management** pane, click the **Platform Event Filters** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Platform Event Alerts** area, check the **Enable Platform Event Alerts** check box.
  - Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.
- 

## Disabling Platform Event Alerts

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to disable platform event alerts.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Event Management**.
  - Step 3** In the **Event Management** pane, click the **Platform Event Filters** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Platform Event Alerts** area, uncheck the **Enable Platform Event Alerts** check box.
  - Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.
- 

## Configuring Platform Event Filters

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure platform event filters.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Event Management**.
  - Step 3** In the **Event Management** pane, click the **Platform Event Filters** tab.
  - Step 4** In the **Platform Event Filters** area, complete the following fields for each event:

Name	Description
ID column	The unique filter ID.

Name	Description
<b>Event</b> column	The name of the event filter.
<b>Action</b> column	For each filter, select the desired action from the scrolling list box. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>—No action is taken.</li> <li>• <b>Reboot</b>—The server is rebooted.</li> <li>• <b>Power Cycle</b>—The server is power cycled.</li> <li>• <b>Power Off</b>—The server is powered off.</li> </ul>
<b>Send Alert</b> column	For each filter that you want to send an alert, check the associated check box in this column. <p><b>Note</b> In order to send an alert, the filter trap settings must be configured properly and the <b>Enable Platform Event Filters</b> check box must also be checked.</p>

**Step 5** Click **Save Changes**.

### What to Do Next

If you configure any PEFs to send an alert, complete the following tasks:

- [Enabling Platform Event Alerts, on page 125](#)
- [Configuring SNMP Trap Settings, on page 114](#)

## Configuring SNMP Trap Settings

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.
- Step 3** In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Common Trap Destination Settings** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Trap Community String</b> field	The name of the SNMP community group to which trap information should be sent.

Name	Description
<b>SNMP Version</b> drop-down list	The SNMP version and model used for the trap. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>V1</b></li> <li>• <b>V2</b></li> <li>• <b>V3</b></li> </ul>
<b>Type</b> field	If you select <b>V2</b> for the version, this is the type of trap to send. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Trap</b></li> <li>• <b>Inform</b></li> </ul>

**Step 5** In the **Trap Destinations** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>ID</b> column	The trap destination ID. This value cannot be modified.
<b>Enabled</b> column	For each SNMP trap destination that you want to use, check the associated check box in this column.
<b>Trap Destination IP Address</b> column	The IP address to which SNMP trap information is sent.

**Tip** To change the settings for a trap or to send a test trap message, administrators can click the trap row in the table.

**Step 6** Click **Save Changes**.

## Sending a Test SNMP Trap Message

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.



## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Event Management**.
- Step 3** In the **Event Management** pane, click the **Trap Settings** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Trap Destinations** area, click the row of the desired SNMP trap destination. The **Traps Details** dialog box opens.
- Step 5** Click **Send SNMP trap**.  
An SNMPv1 test trap message is sent to the trap destination.

**Note** The trap must be configured and enabled in order to send a test message.

# Interpreting Platform Event Traps

A CIMC platform event alert sent as an SNMP trap contains an enterprise object identifier (OID) in the form `1.3.6.1.4.1.3183.1.1.0.event`. The first ten fields of the OID represent the following information: `iso(1).org(3).dod(6).internet(1).private(4).enterprises(1).wired_for_management(3183).PET(1).version(1).version(0)`, indicating an IPMI platform event trap (PET) version 1.0 message. The last field is an event number, indicating the specific condition or alert being notified.

## Platform Event Trap Descriptions

The following table provides a description of the event being notified in a platform event trap message, based on the event number in the trap OID.

Event Number [Note 1]		Platform Event Description
0	0h	Test Trap
65799	010107h	Temperature Warning
65801	010109h	Temperature Critical
131330	020102h	Under Voltage, Critical
131337	020109h	Voltage Critical
196871	030107h	Current Warning
262402	040102h	Fan Critical
459776	070400h	Processor related (IOH-Thermalert/Caterr sensor) – predictive failure deasserted
459777	070401h	Processor related (IOH-Thermalert/Caterr sensor) – predictive failure asserted
460032	070500h	Processor Power Warning – limit not exceeded
460033	070501h	Processor Power Warning – limit exceeded

Event Number [Note 1]		Platform Event Description
524533	0800F5h	Power Supply Critical
524551	080107h	Power Supply Warning
525313	080401h	Discrete Power Supply Warning
527105	080B01h	Power Supply Redundancy Lost
527106	080B02h	Power Supply Redundancy Restored
552704	086F00h	Power Supply Inserted
552705	086F01h	Power Supply Failure
552707	086F03h	Power Supply AC Lost
786433	0C0001h	Correctable ECC Memory Errors, Release 1.3(1) and later releases, filter set to accept all reading types [Note 4]
786439	0C0007h	DDR3_INFO sensor LED - RED bit asserted (Probable ECC error on a DIMM), Generic Sensor [Notes 2,3]
786689	0C0101h	Correctable ECC Memory Errors, Release 1.3(1) and later releases
818945	0C7F01h	Correctable ECC Memory Errors, Release 1.2(x) and earlier releases
818951	0C7F07h	DDR3_INFO sensor LED - RED bit asserted (Probable ECC error on a DIMM), 1.2(x) and earlier releases [Note 3]
851968	0D0000h	HDD sensor indicates no fault, Generic Sensor [Note 2]
851972	0D0004h	HDD sensor indicates a fault, Generic Sensor [Note 2]
854016	0D0800h	HDD Absent, Generic Sensor [Note 2]
854017	0D0801h	HDD Present, Generic Sensor [Note 2]
880384	0D6F00h	HDD Present, no fault indicated
880385	0D6F01h	HDD Fault
880512	0D6F80h	HDD Not Present
880513	0D6F81h	HDD is deasserted but not in a fault state
884480	0D7F00h	Drive Slot LED Off
884481	0D7F01h	Drive Slot LED On
884482	0D7F02h	Drive Slot LED fast blink
884483	0D7F03h	Drive Slot LED slow blink
884484	0D7F04h	Drive Slot LED green
884485	0D7F05h	Drive Slot LED amber
884486	0D7F01h	Drive Slot LED blue
884487	0D7F01h	Drive Slot LED read

Event Number [Note 1]		Platform Event Description
884488	0D7F08h	Drive Slot Online
884489	0D7F09h	Drive Slot Degraded
Note 1: Basic information about the event number format can be found in the <i>IPMI Platform Event Trap Format Specification v1.0</i> at this URL: <a href="ftp://download.intel.com/design/servers/ipmi/pet100.pdf">ftp://download.intel.com/design/servers/ipmi/pet100.pdf</a> .		
Note 2: Some platforms and releases use generic sensor implementations, while some use Cisco proprietary sensor implementations.		
Note 3: In Release 1.3(1) and later releases, the ECC sensor no longer activates the LED.		
Note 4: When the event filter is set to accept all reading types, bits 15:8 of the hex event number are masked to 0. For example, event number 786689 (0C0101h) becomes 786433 (0C0001h).		





# CHAPTER 13

## CIMC Firmware Management

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of Firmware, page 133](#)
- [Obtaining Firmware from Cisco, page 134](#)
- [Installing CIMC Firmware from a TFTP Server, page 135](#)
- [Installing CIMC Firmware Through the Browser, page 136](#)
- [Activating Installed CIMC Firmware, page 137](#)
- [Installing BIOS Firmware from a TFTP Server, page 137](#)
- [Installing BIOS Firmware Through the Browser, page 139](#)

## Overview of Firmware

C-Series servers use Cisco-certified firmware specific to the C-Series server model that you are using. You can download new releases of the firmware for all supported server models from Cisco.com.



### Caution

When you install new BIOS firmware, it must be from the same software release as the CIMC firmware running on the server. Do not install new BIOS firmware until after you have activated the matching CIMC firmware or the server will not boot.

To avoid potential problems, we strongly recommend that you use the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (HUU), which upgrades the BIOS, CIMC, and other firmware to compatible levels. For detailed information about this utility, see the *Cisco Host Upgrade Utility Guide* for the version of the HUU that goes with the CIMC software release that you want to install. The HUU guides are available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products\\_user\\_guide\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products_user_guide_list.html).

If you elect to update the firmware manually, you must update the CIMC firmware first. The CIMC firmware update process is divided into the following stages to minimize the amount of time the server will be offline:

- **Installation.** During this stage, CIMC installs the selected CIMC firmware in the non-active, or backup, slot on the server.

- **Activation.** During this stage, CIMC sets the non-active firmware version as active and reboots the server, causing a disruption in service. When the server reboots, the firmware in the new active slot becomes the running version.

After you activate the CIMC firmware, you can update the BIOS firmware. The server must be powered off during the entire BIOS update process, so the process is not divided into stages. Instead, you only need to issue a single command and CIMC installs and updates the BIOS firmware as quickly as possible. Once the CIMC finishes rebooting, the server can be powered on and returned to service.

**Note**

You can either upgrade an older firmware version to a newer one, or downgrade a newer firmware version to an older one.

## Obtaining Firmware from Cisco

### Procedure

- Step 1** Navigate to <http://www.cisco.com/>.
- Step 2** If you are not already logged in, click **Log In** at the top right-hand edge of the page and log in using your Cisco.com credentials.
- Step 3** In the menu bar at the top, click **Support**.
- Step 4** Click **All Downloads** in the roll down menu.
- Step 5** If your server model is listed in the **Recently Used Products** list, click the server name. Otherwise, do the following:
  - a) In the left-hand box, click **Products**.
  - b) In the center box, click **Unified Computing and Servers**.
  - c) In the right-hand box, click **Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Standalone Server Software**.
  - d) In the right-hand box, click the server model whose software you want to download.
- Step 6** Click the **Unified Computing System (UCS) Server Firmware** link.
- Step 7** (Optional) Select a prior release from the menu bar on the left-hand side of the page.
- Step 8** Click the **Download** button associated with the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility ISO for the selected release.
- Step 9** Click **Accept License Agreement**.
- Step 10** Save the ISO file to a local drive.  
We recommend you upgrade the CIMC and BIOS firmware on your server using this ISO file, which contains the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility. For detailed information about this utility, see the *Cisco Host Upgrade Utility Guide* for the version of the HUU that goes with the CIMC software release that you want to install. The HUU guides are available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products\\_user\\_guide\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products_user_guide_list.html).
- Step 11** (Optional) If you plan to upgrade the CIMC and BIOS firmware manually, do the following:
  - a) From the ISO file, open the ZIP file containing the firmware installation files.  
The ZIP file is on the top-level of the ISO file, and its name follows the format `ServerModel_ReleaseNumber.ZIP`.

For example, C240M3\_1.4.4A.ZIP.

You do not need to extract all of the files contained in this ZIP file. Instead, you only need to open it so that you can access the BIOS firmware installation CAP file and the ZIP file containing the CIMC firmware installation BIN file.

- b) From the *ServerModel\_ReleaseNumber*.ZIP file, extract the BIOS firmware installation CAP file and save it to your local drive.

The CAP file is in the *ReleaseNumber/bios/cimc* folder, and its name follows the format *Server-BIOS-Release-Number.CAP*.

For example, 1.4.4a/bios/cimc/C240-BIOS-1-4-4c-0.CAP.

- c) From the *ServerModel\_ReleaseNumber*.ZIP file, open the ZIP file containing the CIMC firmware installation files.

The ZIP file is in the *ReleaseNumber/cimc* folder and its name follows the format *server-model-cimc-release.zip*.

For example, 1.4.4a/cimc/c240-m3-cimc.1.4.4a.zip.

You do not need to extract all of the files contained in this zip file. Instead, you only need to open it so that you can access the CIMC firmware installation BIN file.

- d) From the *server-model-cimc-release.zip* file, extract the full CIMC firmware installation BIN file and save it to your local drive.

The BIN file is in the *server-model-cimc-release* folder and its name follows the format *upd-pkg-server-model-cimc.full.release.bin*.

For example, c240-m3-cimc.1.4.4a/upd-pkg-c240-m3-cimc.full.1.4.4a.bin.

**Step 12** (Optional) If you plan to install the firmware from a TFTP server, copy the BIOS installation CAP file and the CIMC installation BIN file to the TFTP server you want to use.

The server must have read permission for the destination folder on the TFTP server.

---

### What to Do Next

Use the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility to upgrade all firmware on the server or manually install the CIMC firmware on the server.

## Installing CIMC Firmware from a TFTP Server

### Before You Begin

- Log in to the CIMC GUI as a user with admin privileges.
- Obtain the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility ISO file from Cisco.com and extract the firmware installation files as described in [Obtaining Firmware from Cisco](#), on page 134.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Firmware Management**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Install CIMC Firmware from TFTP Server**.
- Step 4** In the **Install Firmware** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>TFTP Server IP Address</b> field	The IP address of the TFTP server on which the firmware image resides.
<b>Image Path and Filename</b> field	The firmware image filename on the server. When you enter this name, include the relative path for the image file from the top of the TFTP tree to the file location.

- Step 5** Click **Install Firmware**.

### What to Do Next

Activate the CIMC firmware.

## Installing CIMC Firmware Through the Browser

### Before You Begin

- Log in to the CIMC GUI as a user with admin privileges.
- Obtain the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility ISO file from Cisco.com and extract the firmware installation files as described in [Obtaining Firmware from Cisco](#), on page 134.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Firmware Management**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Install CIMC Firmware through Browser Client**.
- Step 4** In the **Install Firmware** dialog box, click **Browse** and use the **Choose File** dialog box to select the .bin file you want to install.
- Step 5** Click **Install Firmware**.

### What to Do Next

Activate the CIMC firmware.



# Activating Installed CIMC Firmware

## Before You Begin

Install the CIMC firmware on the server.



### Important

While the activation is in progress, do not:

- Reset, power off, or shut down the server.
- Reboot or reset CIMC.
- Activate any other firmware.
- Export technical support or configuration data.

## Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Firmware Management**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Activate CIMC Firmware**.  
The **Activate Firmware** dialog box appears.
- Step 4** In the **Activate Firmware** dialog box, choose the firmware image to activate.
- Step 5** Click **Activate Firmware**.

# Installing BIOS Firmware from a TFTP Server



### Note

This procedure is not available on some servers. For other BIOS installation methods, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Server BIOS Upgrade Guide* available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/unified\\_computing/ucs/c/sw/bios/b\\_Upgrading\\_BIOS\\_Firmware.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/unified_computing/ucs/c/sw/bios/b_Upgrading_BIOS_Firmware.html).

## Before You Begin

- Log in to the CIMC GUI as a user with admin privileges.
- Activate the CIMC firmware that goes with the BIOS version you want to install, as described in [Activating Installed CIMC Firmware](#), on page 137.
- Power off the server.

**Caution**

When you install new BIOS firmware, it must be from the same software release as the CIMC firmware running on the server. Do not install new BIOS firmware until after you have activated the matching CIMC firmware or the server will not boot.

To avoid potential problems, we strongly recommend that you use the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (HUU), which upgrades the BIOS, CIMC, and other firmware to compatible levels. For detailed information about this utility, see the *Cisco Host Upgrade Utility Guide* for the version of the HUU that goes with the CIMC software release that you want to install. The HUU guides are available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products\\_user\\_guide\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products_user_guide_list.html).

---

**Procedure**

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Server Status** area, verify that the **Power State** field says "Off". If it says "On", click **Power Off Server** in the **Actions** area and wait for the server to power off before continuing.
- Step 4** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 5** On the **Admin** tab, click **Firmware Management**.
- Step 6** In the **CIMC Firmware** area, make sure the firmware version shown in the **Running Version** field matches the BIOS firmware version you are installing.
- Important** If the CIMC firmware version does not match, activate the CIMC firmware before continuing with this procedure or the server will not boot. For details, see [Activating Installed CIMC Firmware](#), on page 137.
- Step 7** In the **Actions** area, click **Install BIOS Firmware from TFTP Server**.
- Step 8** In the **Install BIOS Firmware** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>TFTP Server IP Address</b> field	The IP address of the TFTP server on which the firmware image resides.
<b>Image Path and Filename</b> field	The firmware image filename on the server. When you enter this name, include the relative path for the image file from the top of the TFTP tree to the file location.

- Step 9** Click **Install Firmware**.
- Step 10** Watch the messages in the **Status** field in the **Last BIOS Firmware Install** area until the status changes to "Completed Successfully".
- Step 11** Power on the server to complete the BIOS upgrade.
-

# Installing BIOS Firmware Through the Browser

**Note**

This procedure is not available on some servers. For other BIOS installation methods, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Server BIOS Upgrade Guide* available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/unified\\_computing/ucs/c/sw/bios/b\\_Upgrading\\_BIOS\\_Firmware.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/unified_computing/ucs/c/sw/bios/b_Upgrading_BIOS_Firmware.html).

**Before You Begin**

- Log in to the CIMC GUI as a user with admin privileges.
- Activate the CIMC firmware that goes with the BIOS version you want to install, as described in [Activating Installed CIMC Firmware, on page 137](#).
- Power off the server.

**Caution**

When you install new BIOS firmware, it must be from the same software release as the CIMC firmware running on the server. Do not install new BIOS firmware until after you have activated the matching CIMC firmware or the server will not boot.

To avoid potential problems, we strongly recommend that you use the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (HUU), which upgrades the BIOS, CIMC, and other firmware to compatible levels. For detailed information about this utility, see the *Cisco Host Upgrade Utility Guide* for the version of the HUU that goes with the CIMC software release that you want to install. The HUU guides are available at the following URL: [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products\\_user\\_guide\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products_user_guide_list.html).

**Procedure**

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Summary**.
- Step 3** In the **Server Status** area, verify that the **Power State** field says "Off". If it says "On", click **Power Off Server** in the **Actions** area and wait for the server to power off before continuing.
- Step 4** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 5** On the **Admin** tab, click **Firmware Management**.
- Step 6** In the **CIMC Firmware** area, make sure the firmware version shown in the **Running Version** field matches the BIOS firmware version you are installing.  
**Important** If the CIMC firmware version does not match, activate the CIMC firmware before continuing with this procedure or the server will not boot. For details, see [Activating Installed CIMC Firmware, on page 137](#).

- Step 7** In the **Actions** area, click **Install BIOS Firmware through Browser Client**.
- Step 8** In the **Install BIOS Firmware** dialog box, click **Browse** and use the **Choose File** dialog box to select the CAP file you want to install.
- Step 9** Click **Install Firmware**.
- Step 10** Watch the messages in the **Status** field in the **Last BIOS Firmware Install** area until the status changes to "Completed Successfully".
- Step 11** Power on the server to complete the BIOS upgrade.
-



# CHAPTER 14

## Viewing Logs

---

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [CIMC Log, page 141](#)
- [System Event Log, page 145](#)

## CIMC Log

### Viewing the CIMC Log

#### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **CIMC Log**.
- Step 3** Review the following information for each CIMC event in the log.

Name	Description
Time column	The date and time the event occurred.

Name	Description
Severity column	The event severity. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Emergency</b></li> <li>• <b>Alert</b></li> <li>• <b>Critical</b></li> <li>• <b>Error</b></li> <li>• <b>Warning</b></li> <li>• <b>Notice</b></li> <li>• <b>Informational</b></li> <li>• <b>Debug</b></li> </ul>
Source column	The software module that logged the event.
Description column	A description of the event.
Clear Log button	Clears all events from the log file. <b>Note</b> This option is only available if your user ID is assigned the <b>admin</b> or <b>user</b> user role.

**Step 4** From the **Entries Per Page** drop-down list, select the number of CIMC events to display on each page.

**Step 5** Click <**Newer** and **Older**> to move backward and forward through the pages of CIMC events, or click <<**Newest** to move to the top of the list.  
By default, the newest CIMC events are displayed at the top of the list.

## Clearing the CIMC Log

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with user privileges to clear the CIMC log.

### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **CIMC Log**.

**Step 3** In the **CIMC Log** pane, click **Clear Log**.

**Step 4** In the dialog box that appears, click **OK**.

## Configuring the CIMC Log Threshold

You can specify the lowest level of messages that will be included in the CIMC log.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **CIMC Log**.
- Step 3** In the **CIMC Log** pane, click the **Logging Controls** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Local Logging** area, use the **Minimum Severity to Report** drop-down list to specify the lowest level of messages that will be included in the CIMC log.
- You can select one of the following, in decreasing order of severity:

- **Emergency**
- **Alert**
- **Critical**
- **Error**
- **Warning**
- **Notice**
- **Informational**
- **Debug**

**Note** CIMC does not log any messages with a severity below the selected severity. For example, if you select **Error**, then the CIMC log will contain all messages with the severity Emergency, Alert, Critical, or Error. It will not show Warning, Notice, Informational, or Debug messages.

---

## Sending the CIMC Log to a Remote Server

You can configure profiles for one or two remote syslog servers to receive CIMC log entries.

### Before You Begin

- The remote syslog server must be configured to receive logs from a remote host.
- The remote syslog server must be configured to receive all types of logs, including authentication-related logs.
- The remote syslog server's firewall must be configured to allow syslog messages to reach the syslog server.

## Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **CIMC Log**.

**Step 3** In the **CIMC Log** pane, click the **Logging Controls** tab.

**Step 4** In either of the **Remote Syslog Server** areas, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Enabled</b> check box	If checked, CIMC sends log messages to the Syslog server named in the <b>IP Address</b> field.
<b>IP Address</b> field	The IP address of the Syslog server on which the CIMC log should be stored.

**Step 5** (Optional) In the **Minimum Severity to Report** drop-down list, specify the lowest level of messages that will be included in the remote logs.

You can select one of the following, in decreasing order of severity:

- **Emergency**
- **Alert**
- **Critical**
- **Error**
- **Warning**
- **Notice**
- **Informational**
- **Debug**

**Note** CIMC does not remotely log any messages with a severity below the selected severity. For example, if you select **Error**, then the CIMC remote log will contain all messages with the severity Emergency, Alert, Critical, or Error. It will not show Warning, Notice, Informational, or Debug messages.

**Step 6** Click **Save Changes**.



# System Event Log

## Viewing the System Event Log

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **System Event Log**.
- Step 3** Above the log table, view the percentage bar, which indicates how full the log buffer is.
- Step 4** Review the following information for each system event in the log:

Name	Description
<b>Time</b> column	The date and time the event occurred.
<b>Severity</b> column	The severity field includes both text and a color-coded icon. For the icon, green indicates normal operation, yellow is informational, and warning, critical, and non-recoverable errors are shown in shades of red.
<b>Description</b> column	A description of the event.
<b>Clear Log</b> button	<p>Clears all events from the log file.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only available if your user ID is assigned the <b>admin</b> or <b>user</b> user role.</p>

- Step 5** From the **Entries Per Page** drop-down list, select the number of system events to display on each page.
- Step 6** Click **<Newer** and **Older>** to move backward and forward through the pages of system events, or click **<<Newest** to move to the top of the list.  
By default, the newest system events are displayed at the top of the list.

## Clearing the System Event Log

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with user privileges to clear the system event log.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **System Event Log**.
  - Step 3** In the **System Event Log** pane, click **Clear Log**.
  - Step 4** In the dialog box that appears, click **OK**.
-



# CHAPTER 15

## Server Utilities

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Exporting Technical Support Data, page 147](#)
- [Rebooting CIMC, page 149](#)
- [Recovering from a Corrupted BIOS, page 150](#)
- [Resetting CIMC to Factory Defaults, page 150](#)
- [Exporting and Importing the CIMC Configuration, page 151](#)

## Exporting Technical Support Data

### Exporting Technical Support Data to TFTP

Perform this task when requested by the Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC). This utility creates a summary report containing configuration information, logs and diagnostic data that will help TAC in troubleshooting and resolving a technical issue.

#### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Export Technical Support Data**.
- Step 4** In the **Export Technical Support Data** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
TFTP Server IP Address field	The IP address of the TFTP server on which the support data file should be stored.

Name	Description
<b>Path and Filename</b> field	<p>The name of the file in which the support data should be stored on the server. When you enter this name, include the relative path for the file from the top of the TFTP tree to the desired location.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If the server includes one of the supported network adapter cards, such as the Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card, the data file also includes technical support data from the adapter card.</p>

#### Step 5 Click **Export**.

#### What to Do Next

Provide the generated report file to Cisco TAC.

## Downloading Technical Support Data to a Local File

Perform this task when requested by the Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC). This utility creates a summary report containing configuration information, logs and diagnostic data that will help TAC in troubleshooting and resolving a technical issue.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.

**Step 3** In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Generate Technical Support Data for Local Download**.

**Step 4** In the **Download Technical Support Data to Local File** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Generate Technical Support Data</b> radio button	<p>CIMC displays this radio button when there is no technical support data file to download.</p> <p>Click <b>Generate</b> to create the data file. When data collection is complete, click <b>Download Technical Support Data to Local File</b> in the <b>Actions</b> area to download the file.</p>
<b>Regenerate Technical Support Data</b> radio button	<p>CIMC displays this radio button when a technical support data file is available to download.</p> <p>To replace the existing support data file with a new one, select this option and click <b>Regenerate</b>. When data collection is complete, click <b>Download Technical Support Data to Local File</b> in the <b>Actions</b> area to download the file.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Download to local file</b> radio button	<p>CIMC enables this radio button when a technical support data file is available to download.</p> <p>To download the existing file, select this option and click <b>Download</b>.</p> <p><b>Note</b> If the server includes one of the supported network adapter cards, such as the Cisco UCS P81E Virtual Interface Card, the data file also includes technical support data from the adapter card.</p>

---

### What to Do Next

Provide the generated report file to Cisco TAC.

## Rebooting CIMC

On rare occasions, such as an issue with the current running firmware, troubleshooting a server may require you to reboot the CIMC. This procedure is not part of the normal maintenance of a server. After you reboot the CIMC, you are logged off and the CIMC will be unavailable for a few minutes.

**Note**

If you reboot the CIMC while the server is performing power-on self test (POST) or is operating in the Extensible Firmware Interface (EFI) shell, the server will be powered down until the CIMC reboot is complete.

---

### Before You Begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to reboot the CIMC.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
  - Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.
  - Step 3** In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Reboot CIMC**.
  - Step 4** Click **OK**.
-

# Recovering from a Corrupted BIOS

**Note**

This procedure is not available in some server models.

In addition to this procedure, there are three other methods for recovering from a corrupted BIOS:

- Use the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (HUU). This is the recommended method.
- Use the CIMC CLI interface.
- If your server model supports it, use the BIOS recovery function of the hardware jumper on the server motherboard. For instructions, see the Cisco UCS Server Installation and Service Guide for your server model.

**Before You Begin**

- You must be logged in as admin to recover corrupt BIOS.
- Have the BIOS recovery ISO image ready. You will find the BIOS recovery ISO image under the **Recovery** folder of the firmware distribution package.
- Schedule some down time for the server because it will be powered cycled at the end of the recovery procedure.

**Procedure**

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.
- Step 2** On the server tab, click **BIOS**.  
The BIOS page appears.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Recover Corrupt BIOS**.  
The **Recover Corrupt BIOS** wizard appears.
- Step 4** Use the **Recover Corrupt BIOS** wizard to recover your corrupt BIOS.
- 

# Resetting CIMC to Factory Defaults

On rare occasions, such as an issue with the current running firmware, troubleshooting a server may require you to reset the CIMC to the factory default. When this happens, all user-configurable settings are reset.

This procedure is not part of the normal server maintenance. After you reset the CIMC, you are logged off and must log in again. You may also lose connectivity and may need to reconfigure the network settings.

**Before You Begin**

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to reset the CIMC to factory defaults.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Reset CIMC to Factory Default Configuration**.
- Step 4** Click **OK**.
- A reboot of CIMC while the host is performing BIOS POST (Power on Self Test) or is in EFI shell will turn off the host for a short amount of time. CIMC will power on when it is ready.
- 

## Exporting and Importing the CIMC Configuration

### Exporting and Importing the CIMC Configuration

To perform a backup of the CIMC configuration, you take a snapshot of the system configuration and export the resulting CIMC configuration file to a location on your network. The export operation saves information from the management plane only; it does not back up data on the servers. Sensitive configuration information such as user accounts and the server certificate are not exported.

You can restore an exported CIMC configuration file to the same system or you can import it to another CIMC system, provided that the software version of the importing system is the same as or is configuration-compatible with the software version of the exporting system. When you import a configuration file to another system as a configuration template, you must modify system-specific settings such as IP addresses and host names. An import operation modifies information on the management plane only.

The CIMC configuration file is an XML text file whose structure and elements correspond to the CIMC command modes.

When performing an export or import operation, consider these guidelines:

- You can perform an export or an import while the system is up and running. While an export operation has no impact on the server or network traffic, some modifications caused by an import operation, such as IP address changes, can disrupt traffic or cause a server reboot.
- You cannot execute an export and an import simultaneously.

### Exporting the CIMC Configuration

**Note**

---

For security reasons, this operation does not export user accounts or the server certificate.

---

**Before You Begin**

Obtain the backup TFTP server IP address.

If you want the option to restore the SNMP configuration information when you import the configuration file, make sure that SNMP is enabled on this server before you create the configuration file. If SNMP is disabled when you export the configuration, CIMC will not apply the SNMP values when the file is imported.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.
- Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Export CIMC Configuration**.
- Step 4** In the **Export CIMC Configuration** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Export to a local file</b> radio button	Select this option and click <b>Export</b> to save the XML configuration file to a drive that is local to the computer running the CIMC GUI.  When you select this option, CIMC GUI displays a <b>Browse</b> dialog box that lets you navigate to the location to which the configuration file should be saved.
<b>Export to TFTP server</b> radio button	Select this option to save the XML configuration file to a TFTP server. When you select this option, CIMC GUI displays the following fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TFTP Server IP Address</b>—The IP address of the TFTP server to which the configuration file will be exported.</li> <li>• <b>Path and Filename</b>—The path and filename CIMC should use when exporting the file to the TFTP server.</li> </ul>

- Step 5** Click **Export**.

## Importing a CIMC Configuration

### Before You Begin

If you want to restore the SNMP configuration information when you import the configuration file, make sure that SNMP is disabled on this server before you do the import. If SNMP is enabled when you perform the import, CIMC does not overwrite the current values with those saved in the configuration file.



## Procedure

**Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

**Step 2** On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.

**Step 3** In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Import CIMC Configuration**.

**Step 4** In the **Import CIMC Configuration** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
<b>Import from a local file</b> radio button	Select this option and click <b>Import</b> to navigate to the XML configuration file stored on a drive that is local to the computer running the CIMC GUI.  When you select this option, CIMC GUI displays the <b>File</b> field and a <b>Browse</b> button that lets you navigate to the file you want to import.
<b>Import from TFTP server</b> radio button	Select this option to import the XML configuration file from a TFTP server.  When you select this option, CIMC GUI displays the following fields: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>TFTP Server IP Address</b>—The IP address of the TFTP server on which the configuration file resides.</li><li>• <b>Path and Filename</b>—The path and filename of the configuration file on the TFTP server.</li></ul>

**Step 5** Click **Import**.





## APPENDIX **A**

# BIOS Parameters by Server Model

This appendix contains the following sections:

- [C22 and C24 Servers, page 155](#)
- [C200 and C210 Servers, page 170](#)
- [C220 and C240 Servers, page 183](#)
- [C250 Servers, page 198](#)
- [C260 Servers, page 211](#)
- [C460 Servers, page 222](#)

## C22 and C24 Servers

### Main BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers

Name	Description
TPM Support	<p>TPM (Trusted Platform Module) is a microchip designed to provide basic security-related functions primarily involving encryption keys. This option allows you to control the TPM Security Device support for the system. It can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not use the TPM.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server uses the TPM.</li></ul> <p><b>Note</b> We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>

## Advanced BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers

### Processor Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Intel Hyper-Threading Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit hyperthreading.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Execute Disable</b>	<p>Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not classify memory areas.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor classifies memory areas.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel VT</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit virtualization.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.</p>
<b>Intel VT-d</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not use virtualization technology.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses virtualization technology.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Intel VT-d Coherency Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support coherency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d ATS Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support ATS.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Hardware Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor allows the Intel hardware prefetcher to fetch streams of data and instruction from memory into the unified second-level cache when necessary. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The hardware prefetcher is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses the hardware prefetcher when cache issues are detected.</li> </ul>
<b>Adjacent Cache Line Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor fetches cache lines in even/odd pairs instead of fetching just the required line. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor only fetches the required line.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor fetches both the required line and its paired line.</li> </ul>
<b>DCU Streamer Prefetch</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not try to anticipate cache read requirements and only fetches explicitly requested lines.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The DCU prefetcher analyzes the cache read pattern and prefetches the next line in the cache if it determines that it may be needed.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>DCU IP Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not preload any cache data.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The DCU IP prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.</li> </ul>
<b>Direct Cache Access Support</b>	<p>Allows processors to increase I/O performance by placing data from I/O devices directly into the processor cache. This setting helps to reduce cache misses. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is not placed directly into the processor cache.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is placed directly into the processor cache.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Technology</b>	<p>Enables you to configure the CPU power management settings for the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</li> <li>• Intel Turbo Boost Technology</li> <li>• Processor Power State C6</li> </ul> <p>Power Technology can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Custom</b>—The server uses the individual settings for the BIOS parameters mentioned above. You must select this option if you want to change any of these BIOS parameters.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not perform any CPU power management and any settings for the BIOS parameters mentioned above are ignored.</li> <li>• <b>Energy Efficient</b>—The server determines the best settings for the BIOS parameters mentioned above and ignores the individual settings for these parameters.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p> <p><b>Note</b>    <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p>
<b>Intel Turbo Boost Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b>    <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p>
<b>Processor Power State C6</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C6 report.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b>    <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Processor Power State C1 Enhanced</b>	<p>Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state.</li> </ul>
<b>Frequency Floor Override</b>	<p>Whether the CPU is allowed to drop below the maximum non-turbo frequency when idle. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>— The CPU can drop below the maximum non-turbo frequency when idle. This option decreases power consumption but may reduce system performance.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>— The CPU cannot drop below the maximum non-turbo frequency when idle. This option improves system performance but may increase power consumption.</li> </ul>
<b>Energy Performance</b>	<p>Allows you to determine whether system performance or energy efficiency is more important on this server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Balanced Energy</b></li> <li>• <b>Balanced Performance</b></li> <li>• <b>Energy Efficient</b></li> <li>• <b>Performance</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b>    <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p> <p>In addition, some operating systems, such as Windows 2008, ignore this parameter in favor of their own power plan.</p>



**Memory Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Select Memory RAS</b>	<p>How the memory reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) is configured for the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Lockstep</b>—If the DIMM pairs in the server have an identical type, size, and organization and are populated across the SMI channels, you can enable lockstep mode to minimize memory access latency and provide better performance. This option offers better system performance than Mirroring and better reliability than Maximum Performance but lower reliability than Mirroring and lower system performance than Maximum Performance.</li> <li>• <b>Maximum Performance</b>—System performance is optimized.</li> <li>• <b>Mirroring</b>—System reliability is optimized by using half the system memory as backup.</li> </ul>
<b>NUMA</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS supports NUMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not support NUMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS includes the ACPI tables that are required for NUMA-aware operating systems. If you enable this option, the system must disable Inter-Socket Memory interleaving on some platforms.</li> </ul>
<b>Low Voltage DDR Mode</b>	<p>Whether the system prioritizes low voltage or high frequency memory operations. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Power Saving Mode</b>—The system prioritizes low voltage memory operations over high frequency memory operations. This mode may lower memory frequency in order to keep the voltage low.</li> <li>• <b>Performance Mode</b>—The system prioritizes high frequency operations over low voltage operations.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Channel Interleaving</b>	<p>Whether the CPU divides memory blocks and spreads contiguous portions of data across interleaved channels to enable simultaneous read operations. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines what interleaving is done.</li> <li>• <b>1 Way</b>—Some channel interleaving is used.</li> <li>• <b>2 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>3 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>4 Way</b>—The maximum amount of channel interleaving is used.</li> </ul>
<b>Rank Interleaving</b>	<p>Whether the CPU interleaves physical ranks of memory so that one rank can be accessed while another is being refreshed. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines what interleaving is done.</li> <li>• <b>1 Way</b>—Some rank interleaving is used.</li> <li>• <b>2 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>4 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>8 Way</b>—The maximum amount of rank interleaving is used.</li> </ul>
<b>Patrol Scrub</b>	<p>Whether the system actively searches for, and corrects, single bit memory errors even in unused portions of the memory on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system checks for memory ECC errors only when the CPU reads or writes a memory address.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system periodically reads and writes memory searching for ECC errors. If any errors are found, the system attempts to fix them. This option may correct single bit errors before they become multi-bit errors, but it may adversely affect performance when the patrol scrub is running.</li> </ul>
<b>Demand Scrub</b>	<p>Whether the system corrects single bit memory errors encountered when the CPU or I/O makes a demand read. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Single bit memory errors are not corrected.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Single bit memory errors are corrected in memory and the corrected data is set in response to the demand read.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Altitude</b>	<p>The approximate number of meters above sea level at which the physical server is installed. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines the physical elevation.</li> <li>• <b>300 M</b>—The server is approximately 300 meters above sea level.</li> <li>• <b>900 M</b>—The server is approximately 900 meters above sea level.</li> <li>• <b>1500 M</b>—The server is approximately 1500 meters above sea level.</li> <li>• <b>3000 M</b>—The server is approximately 3000 meters above sea level.</li> </ul>

#### QPI Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>QPI Link Frequency</b>	<p>The Intel QuickPath Interconnect (QPI) link frequency, in gigatransfers per second (GT/s). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines the QPI link frequency.</li> <li>• <b>6.4 GT/s</b></li> <li>• <b>7.2 GT/s</b></li> <li>• <b>8.0 GT/s</b></li> </ul>

#### Onboard Storage Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Onboard SCU Storage Support</b>	<p>Whether the onboard software RAID controller is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The software RAID controller is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The software RAID controller is available.</li> </ul>

**USB Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Legacy USB Support</b>	<p>Whether the system supports legacy USB devices. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—USB devices are only available to EFI applications.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Legacy USB support is always available.</li> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—Disables legacy USB support if no USB devices are connected.</li> </ul>
<b>Port 60/64 Emulation</b>	<p>Whether the system supports 60h/64h emulation for complete USB keyboard legacy support. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—60h/64 emulation is not supported.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—60h/64 emulation is supported.</li> </ul> <p>You should select this option if you are using a non-USB aware operating system on the server.</p>

**PCI Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>PCIe OptionROM Priority</b>	<p>If the server has both legacy and EFI compatible PCI Option ROMs, this parameter specifies which Option ROM the server should launch. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>EFI Compatible ROM</b>—The server launches the EFI compatible PCI Option ROM.</li> <li>• <b>Legacy ROM</b>—The server launches the legacy PCI Option ROM.</li> </ul>
<b>MMIO Above 4GB</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable memory mapped I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. Legacy option ROMs are not able to access addresses above 4GB. PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> </ul>

**Serial Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Console Redirection</b>	<p>Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the BIOS has booted and the operating system is responsible for the server, console redirection is irrelevant and has no effect. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—No console redirection occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Enables console redirection on serial port A during POST.</li> </ul>
<b>Terminal Type</b>	<p>What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PC-ANSI</b>—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100</b>—A supported vt100 video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100+</b>—A supported vt100-plus video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT-UTF8</b>—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Bits per second</b>	<p>What BAUD rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>9600</b>—A 9,600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>19200</b>—A 19,200 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>38400</b>—A 38,400 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>57600</b>—A 57,600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>115200</b>—A 115,200 BAUD rate is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Flow Control</b>	<p>Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>—No flow control is used.</li> <li>• <b>Hardware RTS/CTS</b>—RTS/CTS is used for flow control.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>

### LOM and PCIe Slots Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>LOM Port 0 Legacy OptionROM</b>	<p>Whether LOM port 0 is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—LOM port 0 is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—LOM port 0 is available.</li> </ul>
<b>LOM Port 1 Legacy OptionROM</b>	<p>Whether LOM port 1 is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—LOM port 1 is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—LOM port 1 is available.</li> </ul>
<b>All PCIe Slots OptionROM</b>	<p>Whether the server can use the PCIe Option ROM expansion slots. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Slot:<i>n</i> OptionROM</b>	<p>Whether PCIe expansion slot <i>n</i> is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is available.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>PCIe Slot:<i>n</i> Link Speed</b>	<p>This option allows you to restrict the maximum speed of an adapter card installed in PCIe slot <i>n</i>. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>GEN1</b>—2.5GT/s (gigatransfers per second) is the maximum speed allowed.</li> <li>• <b>GEN2</b>—5GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.</li> <li>• <b>GEN3</b>—8GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.</li> </ul> <p>For example, if you have a 3<sup>rd</sup> generation adapter card in PCIe slot 2 that you want to run at a maximum of 5GT/s instead of the 8GT/s that card supports, set the PCIe Slot 2 Link Speed to <b>GEN2</b>. The system then ignores the card's supported maximum speed of 8GT/s and forces it to run at a maximum of 5 GT/s.</p>

## Server Management BIOS Parameters for C22 and C24 Servers

Name	Description
<b>FRB-2 Timer</b>	<p>Whether the FRB2 timer is used by CIMC to recover the system if it hangs during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is started during POST and used to recover the system if necessary.</li> </ul>
<b>OS Watchdog Timer</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS programs the watchdog timer with a specified timeout value. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The watchdog timer is not used to track how long the server takes to boot.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The watchdog timer tracks how long the server takes to boot. If the server does not boot within the length of time specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout</b> field, the CIMC logs an error and takes the action specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Policy</b> field.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>OS Watchdog Timer Timeout</b>	<p>What timeout value the BIOS uses to configure the watchdog timer. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>5 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 5 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>10 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 10 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>15 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 15 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>20 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 20 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>
<b>OS Watchdog Timer Policy</b>	<p>What action the system takes if the watchdog timer expires. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Do Nothing</b>—The server takes no action if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li> <li>• <b>Power Down</b>—The server is powered off if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li> <li>• <b>Reset</b>—The server is reset if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>



Name	Description
<b>Boot Order Rules</b>	<p>How the server changes the boot order list defined through the CIMC GUI or CLI when there are no devices of a particular device type available or when the user defines a different boot order using the server's BIOS Setup Utility.</p> <p>The supported device types are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HDD</b>—Hard disk drive</li> <li>• <b>FDD</b>—Floppy disk drive</li> <li>• <b>CDROM</b>—Bootable CD-ROM or DVD</li> <li>• <b>PXE</b>—PXE boot</li> <li>• <b>EFI</b>—Extensible Firmware Interface</li> </ul> <p>The Boot Order Rules option can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Strict</b>—When no devices of a particular type are available, the system creates a placeholder for that device type in the boot order list. When a device of that type becomes available, it is added to the boot order in the previously defined position.</li> </ul> <p>If the user defines a boot order through the server's BIOS Setup Utility, that boot order is given priority over the boot order configured through the CIMC GUI or CLI. All device types defined through CIMC that are not present in the boot order defined through the BIOS Setup Utility are removed from the boot order list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Loose</b>—When no devices of a particular type are available, the system removes that device type from the boot order. When a device of that type becomes available, the system adds it to the end of the boot order list.</li> </ul> <p>If the boot order is configured through the server's BIOS Setup Utility, that boot order is given priority over the boot order configured through the CIMC GUI or CLI. All device types defined through CIMC that are not present in the boot order defined through the BIOS Setup Utility are moved to the end of the boot order list.</p>

# C200 and C210 Servers

## Main BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers

Name	Description
POST Error Pause	<p>What happens when the server encounters a critical error during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS pauses the attempt to boot the server and opens the Error Manager when a critical error occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS continues to attempt to boot the server.</li> </ul>
Boot Option Retry	<p>Whether the BIOS retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Continually retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Waits for user input before retrying NON-EFI based boot options.</li> </ul>
USB Boot Priority	<p>Whether the BIOS tries to boot from any available USB device before it tries to boot from the server hard drive. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server attempts to boot from a USB device if one is available. In addition, when a USB device is discovered, it is put at the top of its boot category.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server attempts to boot from the server hard drive before it tries USB devices. In addition, when a USB device is discovered, it is put at the bottom of its boot category.</li> </ul>

## Advanced BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers

### Processor Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Intel Turbo Boost Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required.</li> </ul>
<b>Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel Hyper-Threading Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit hyperthreading.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Number of Enabled Cores</b>	<p>Allows you to disable one or more of the physical cores on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b>—Enables all physical cores. This also enables Hyper Threading on the associated logical processor cores.</li> <li>• <b>1 through <i>n</i></b>—Specifies the number of physical processor cores that can run on the server. Each physical core has an associated logical core.</li> </ul> <p>To disable Hyper Threading and have only one logical processor core running on the server, select <b>1</b>.</p> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Execute Disable</b>	<p>Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not classify memory areas.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor classifies memory areas.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel Virtualization Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit virtualization.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.</p>
<b>Intel VT for Directed IO</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not use virtualization technology.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses virtualization technology.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support remapping.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Interrupt Remapping as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Coherency Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support coherency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Address Translation Services</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support ATS.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d PassThrough DMA</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Pass-through DMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support pass-through DMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Pass-through DMA as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Direct Cache Access</b>	<p>Allows processors to increase I/O performance by placing data from I/O devices directly into the processor cache. This setting helps to reduce cache misses. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is not placed directly into the processor cache.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is placed directly into the processor cache.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Processor C3 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C3 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C3 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C3 report.</li><li>• <b>ACPI C2</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C2 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li><li>• <b>ACPI C3</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C3 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li></ul>
<b>Processor C6 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C6 report.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state.</li></ul>

Name	Description
<b>CPU Performance</b>	<p>Sets the CPU performance profile for the server. The performance profile consists of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data Reuse Optimization</li> <li>• DCU Streamer Prefetcher</li> <li>• DCU IP Prefetcher</li> <li>• Hardware Prefetcher</li> <li>• Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch</li> </ul> <p>This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enterprise</b>—Only the DCU IP Prefetcher is enabled. The rest of the options are disabled.</li> <li>• <b>High Throughput</b>—All options are enabled.</li> <li>• <b>HPC</b>—Data Reuse Optimization is disabled and all other options are enabled. This setting is also known as high performance computing.</li> <li>• <b>Custom</b>—All performance profile options can be configured from the BIOS setup on the server. In addition, the Hardware Prefetcher and Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch options can be configured in the fields below.</li> </ul>
<b>Hardware Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor allows the Intel hardware prefetcher to fetch streams of data and instruction from memory into the unified second-level cache when necessary. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The hardware prefetcher is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses the hardware prefetcher when cache issues are detected.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b>     <b>CPU Performance</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> in order to specify this value. For any value other than <b>Custom</b>, this option is overridden by the setting in the selected CPU performance profile.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch</b>	<p>Whether the processor fetches cache lines in even/odd pairs instead of fetching just the required line. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor only fetches the required line.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>— The processor fetches both the required line and its paired line.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> <b>CPU Performance</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> in order to specify this value. For any value other than <b>Custom</b>, this option is overridden by the setting in the selected CPU performance profile.</p>
<b>CPU C State</b>	<p>Whether the system can enter a power savings mode during idle periods. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system remains in high performance state even when idle.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system can reduce power to system components such as the DIMMs and CPUs. The amount of power reduction is specified in the <b>Package C State Limit</b> field.</li> </ul>
<b>C1E</b>	<p>Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>CPU C State</b> is enabled.</p>
<b>OEM AESNI</b>	<p>Whether the server uses the AES-NI encryption instruction set that improves on the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithm. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server only uses AES encryption.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server uses AES-NI encryption when possible.</li> </ul>



**Mass Storage Controller Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Onboard SATA Controller</b>	Whether the processor uses its built-in SATA controller. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not use the onboard SATA controller.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses the built-in SATA controller.</li> </ul>
<b>SATA Mode</b>	The mode in which the SATA controller runs. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>AHCI</b>—The controller enables the Advanced Host Controller Interface (AHCI) and disables RAID.</li> <li>• <b>Compatibility</b>—The controller disables both AHCI and RAID and runs in IDE emulation mode.</li> <li>• <b>Enhanced</b>—The controller enables both AHCI and RAID.</li> <li>• <b>S/W RAID</b>—The controller enables RAID and disables the AHCI.</li> </ul>

**Serial Port Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Serial A Enable</b>	Whether serial port A is enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port is enabled.</li> </ul>
<b>Serial A Address</b>	If serial port A is enabled, select the hex address that it should use. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>3F8</b></li> <li>• <b>2F8</b></li> <li>• <b>3E8</b></li> <li>• <b>2E8</b></li> </ul>
<b>Serial B Enable</b>	Whether serial port B is enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port is enabled.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Serial B Address</b>	<p>If serial port B is enabled, select the hex address that it should use. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>3F8</b></li> <li>• <b>2F8</b></li> <li>• <b>3E8</b></li> <li>• <b>2E8</b></li> </ul>

### USB Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>USB Controller</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses its built-in USB controller. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not use the built-in USB controller.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses the built-in USB controller.</li> </ul>
<b>Make Device Non-Bootable</b>	<p>Whether the server can boot from a USB device. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server can boot from a USB device.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server cannot boot from a USB device.</li> </ul>
<b>USB Performance Mode</b>	<p>Whether the server uses USB 2.0 or USB 1.1 mode. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>High Performance</b>—The server enables the EHCI (USB 2.0) controllers so that all USB devices function in USB 2.0 mode. This option maximizes USB device performance but requires additional power.</li> <li>• <b>Lower Idle Power</b>—The server disables the EHCI (USB 2.0) controllers so that all USB devices function in USB 1.1 mode. This option requires less power but decreases USB device performance.</li> </ul>

## PCI Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Memory Mapped I/O Above 4GB</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable memory mapped I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. Legacy option ROMs are not able to access addresses above 4GB. PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard Gb NIC 1</b>	<p>Whether the first onboard Network Interface Card (NIC) is enabled or disabled on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—NIC 1 is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—NIC 1 is available.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard Gb NIC 2</b>	<p>Whether the second onboard NIC is enabled or disabled on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—NIC 2 is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—NIC 2 is available.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard Gb NIC <i>n</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether the system loads the embedded PXE option ROM for the onboard NIC designated by <i>n</i>. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PXE option ROM is not available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PXE option ROM is available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe OptionROMs</b>	<p>Whether the server can use the PCIe Option ROM expansion slots. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Slot <i>n</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether PCIe expansion slot <i>n</i> is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is available.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>PCIe Mezzanine Slot ROM</b>	Whether the PCIe mezzanine slot expansion ROM is available to the server. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The mezzanine slot is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The mezzanine slot is available.</li> </ul>
<b>Active Video</b>	How the server displays video. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The server uses an external graphics adapter for display if one is available.</li> <li>• <b>Onboard Device</b>—The server always uses its internal graphics adapter even if an external graphics adapter is available.</li> </ul>

## Server Management BIOS Parameters for C200 and C210 Servers

Name	Description
<b>Assert NMI on SERR</b>	Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a system error (SERR) occurs. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a SERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a SERR occurs. You must enable this setting if you want to enable <b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>	Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a processor bus parity error (PERR) occurs. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a PERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a PERR occurs. You must enable <b>Assert NMI on SERR</b> to use this setting.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>FRB2 Enable</b>	<p>Whether the FRB2 timer is used by CIMC to recover the system if it hangs during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is started during POST and used to recover the system if necessary.</li> </ul>
<b>PlugNPlay BMC Detection</b>	<p>Whether the system automatically detects the BMC in ACPI-compliant operating systems. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system never automatically detects the BMC.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system automatically detects the BMC whenever possible.</li> </ul>
<b>ACPI1.0 Support</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS publishes the ACPI 1.0 version of FADT in the Root System Description table. This version may be required for compatibility with OS versions that only support ACPI 1.0. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—ACPI 1.0 version is not published.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—ACPI 1.0 version is published.</li> </ul>
<b>Console Redirection</b>	<p>Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the BIOS has booted and the operating system is responsible for the server, console redirection is irrelevant and has no effect. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—No console redirection occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Serial Port A</b>—Enables console redirection on serial port A during POST.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you enable this option, you also disable the display of the Quiet Boot logo screen during POST.</p>
<b>Flow Control</b>	<p>Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>—No flow control is used.</li> <li>• <b>RTS-CTS</b>—RTS/CTS is used for flow control.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Baud Rate</b>	<p>What BAUD rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>9.6k</b>—A 9600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>19.2k</b>—A 19200 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>38.4k</b>—A 38400 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>57.6k</b>—A 57600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>115.2k</b>—A 115200 BAUD rate is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Terminal Type</b>	<p>What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PC-ANSI</b>—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100</b>—A supported vt100 video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100-PLUS</b>—A supported vt100-plus video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT-UTF8</b>—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Legacy OS Redirection</b>	<p>Whether redirection from a legacy operating system, such as DOS, is enabled on the serial port. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is hidden from the legacy operating system.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is visible to the legacy operating system.</li> </ul>

# C220 and C240 Servers

## Main BIOS Parameters for C220 and C240 Servers

Name	Description
TPM Support	<p>TPM (Trusted Platform Module) is a microchip designed to provide basic security-related functions primarily involving encryption keys. This option allows you to control the TPM Security Device support for the system. It can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not use the TPM.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server uses the TPM.</li></ul> <p><b>Note</b> We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>

## Advanced BIOS Parameters for C220 and C240 Servers

### Processor Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
Intel Hyper-Threading Technology	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit hyperthreading.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.</li></ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Execute Disable</b>	<p>Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not classify memory areas.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor classifies memory areas.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel VT</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit virtualization.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.</p>
<b>Intel VT-d</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not use virtualization technology.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses virtualization technology.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Coherency Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support coherency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d ATS Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support ATS.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.</li> </ul>



Name	Description
<b>Hardware Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor allows the Intel hardware prefetcher to fetch streams of data and instruction from memory into the unified second-level cache when necessary. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The hardware prefetcher is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses the hardware prefetcher when cache issues are detected.</li> </ul>
<b>Adjacent Cache Line Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor fetches cache lines in even/odd pairs instead of fetching just the required line. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor only fetches the required line.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor fetches both the required line and its paired line.</li> </ul>
<b>DCU Streamer Prefetch</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not try to anticipate cache read requirements and only fetches explicitly requested lines.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The DCU prefetcher analyzes the cache read pattern and prefetches the next line in the cache if it determines that it may be needed.</li> </ul>
<b>DCU IP Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not preload any cache data.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The DCU IP prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.</li> </ul>
<b>Direct Cache Access Support</b>	<p>Allows processors to increase I/O performance by placing data from I/O devices directly into the processor cache. This setting helps to reduce cache misses. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is not placed directly into the processor cache.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is placed directly into the processor cache.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Power Technology</b>	<p>Enables you to configure the CPU power management settings for the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</li> <li>• Intel Turbo Boost Technology</li> <li>• Processor Power State C6</li> </ul> <p>Power Technology can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Custom</b>—The server uses the individual settings for the BIOS parameters mentioned above. You must select this option if you want to change any of these BIOS parameters.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not perform any CPU power management and any settings for the BIOS parameters mentioned above are ignored.</li> <li>• <b>Energy Efficient</b>—The server determines the best settings for the BIOS parameters mentioned above and ignores the individual settings for these parameters.</li> </ul>
<b>Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p> <p><b>Note</b> <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Intel Turbo Boost Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p>
<b>Processor Power State C6</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C6 report.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p>
<b>Processor Power State C1 Enhanced</b>	<p>Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state.</li> </ul>
<b>Frequency Floor Override</b>	<p>Whether the CPU is allowed to drop below the maximum non-turbo frequency when idle. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>— The CPU can drop below the maximum non-turbo frequency when idle. This option decreases power consumption but may reduce system performance.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>— The CPU cannot drop below the maximum non-turbo frequency when idle. This option improves system performance but may increase power consumption.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Energy Performance</b>	<p>Allows you to determine whether system performance or energy efficiency is more important on this server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Balanced Energy</b></li> <li>• <b>Balanced Performance</b></li> <li>• <b>Energy Efficient</b></li> <li>• <b>Performance</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> <b>Power Technology</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.</p> <p>In addition, some operating systems, such as Windows 2008, ignore this parameter in favor of their own power plan.</p>

### Memory Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Select Memory RAS</b>	<p>How the memory reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) is configured for the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Lockstep</b>—If the DIMM pairs in the server have an identical type, size, and organization and are populated across the SMI channels, you can enable lockstep mode to minimize memory access latency and provide better performance. This option offers better system performance than Mirroring and better reliability than Maximum Performance but lower reliability than Mirroring and lower system performance than Maximum Performance.</li> <li>• <b>Maximum Performance</b>—System performance is optimized.</li> <li>• <b>Mirroring</b>—System reliability is optimized by using half the system memory as backup.</li> </ul>
<b>NUMA</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS supports NUMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not support NUMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS includes the ACPI tables that are required for NUMA-aware operating systems. If you enable this option, the system must disable Inter-Socket Memory interleaving on some platforms.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Low Voltage DDR Mode</b>	<p>Whether the system prioritizes low voltage or high frequency memory operations. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Power Saving Mode</b>—The system prioritizes low voltage memory operations over high frequency memory operations. This mode may lower memory frequency in order to keep the voltage low.</li> <li>• <b>Performance Mode</b>—The system prioritizes high frequency operations over low voltage operations.</li> </ul>
<b>Channel Interleaving</b>	<p>Whether the CPU divides memory blocks and spreads contiguous portions of data across interleaved channels to enable simultaneous read operations. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines what interleaving is done.</li> <li>• <b>1 Way</b>—Some channel interleaving is used.</li> <li>• <b>2 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>3 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>4 Way</b>—The maximum amount of channel interleaving is used.</li> </ul>
<b>Rank Interleaving</b>	<p>Whether the CPU interleaves physical ranks of memory so that one rank can be accessed while another is being refreshed. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines what interleaving is done.</li> <li>• <b>1 Way</b>—Some rank interleaving is used.</li> <li>• <b>2 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>4 Way</b></li> <li>• <b>8 Way</b>—The maximum amount of rank interleaving is used.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Patrol Scrub</b>	<p>Whether the system actively searches for, and corrects, single bit memory errors even in unused portions of the memory on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system checks for memory ECC errors only when the CPU reads or writes a memory address.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system periodically reads and writes memory searching for ECC errors. If any errors are found, the system attempts to fix them. This option may correct single bit errors before they become multi-bit errors, but it may adversely affect performance when the patrol scrub is running.</li> </ul>
<b>Demand Scrub</b>	<p>Whether the system corrects single bit memory errors encountered when the CPU or I/O makes a demand read. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Single bit memory errors are not corrected.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Single bit memory errors are corrected in memory and the corrected data is set in response to the demand read.</li> </ul>
<b>Altitude</b>	<p>The approximate number of meters above sea level at which the physical server is installed. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines the physical elevation.</li> <li>• <b>300 M</b>—The server is approximately 300 meters above sea level.</li> <li>• <b>900 M</b>—The server is approximately 900 meters above sea level.</li> <li>• <b>1500 M</b>—The server is approximately 1500 meters above sea level.</li> <li>• <b>3000 M</b>—The server is approximately 3000 meters above sea level.</li> </ul>

**QPI Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>QPI Link Frequency</b>	<p>The Intel QuickPath Interconnect (QPI) link frequency, in gigatransfers per second (GT/s). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Auto</b>—The CPU determines the QPI link frequency.</li><li>• <b>6.4 GT/s</b></li><li>• <b>7.2 GT/s</b></li><li>• <b>8.0 GT/s</b></li></ul>

**Onboard Storage Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Onboard SCU Storage Support</b>	<p>Whether the onboard software RAID controller is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The software RAID controller is not available.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The software RAID controller is available.</li></ul>

**USB Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Legacy USB Support</b>	<p>Whether the system supports legacy USB devices. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—USB devices are only available to EFI applications.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Legacy USB support is always available.</li><li>• <b>Auto</b>—Disables legacy USB support if no USB devices are connected.</li></ul>
<b>Port 60/64 Emulation</b>	<p>Whether the system supports 60h/64h emulation for complete USB keyboard legacy support. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—60h/64 emulation is not supported.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—60h/64 emulation is supported.</li></ul> <p>You should select this option if you are using a non-USB aware operating system on the server.</p>

**PCI Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>PCIe OptionROM Priority</b>	<p>If the server has both legacy and EFI compatible PCI Option ROMs, this parameter specifies which Option ROM the server should launch. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>EFI Compatible ROM</b>—The server launches the EFI compatible PCI Option ROM.</li> <li>• <b>Legacy ROM</b>—The server launches the legacy PCI Option ROM.</li> </ul>
<b>MMIO Above 4GB</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable memory mapped I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. Legacy option ROMs are not able to access addresses above 4GB. PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> </ul>

**Serial Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Console Redirection</b>	<p>Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the BIOS has booted and the operating system is responsible for the server, console redirection is irrelevant and has no effect. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—No console redirection occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>COM 0</b>—Enables console redirection on COM port 0 during POST.</li> <li>• <b>COM 1</b>—Enables console redirection on COM port 1 during POST.</li> </ul>



Name	Description
<b>Terminal Type</b>	<p>What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PC-ANSI</b>—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100</b>—A supported vt100 video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100+</b>—A supported vt100-plus video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT-UTF8</b>—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Bits per second</b>	<p>What BAUD rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>9600</b>—A 9,600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>19200</b>—A 19,200 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>38400</b>—A 38,400 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>57600</b>—A 57,600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>115200</b>—A 115,200 BAUD rate is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Flow Control</b>	<p>Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>—No flow control is used.</li> <li>• <b>Hardware RTS/CTS</b>—RTS/CTS is used for flow control.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>

## PCIe Slots Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>LOM Port <i>n</i> Legacy OptionROM</b>	Whether Option ROM is available on the legacy LOM port designated by <i>n</i> . This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Option ROM is not available on LOM port <i>n</i>.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Option ROM is available on LOM port <i>n</i>.</li> </ul>
<b>All PCIe Slots OptionROM</b>	Whether the server can use the PCIe Option ROM expansion slots. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Slot:<i>n</i> OptionROM</b>	Whether PCIe expansion slot <i>n</i> is available to the server. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Mezzanine OptionROM</b>	Whether the PCIe mezzanine slot expansion ROM is available to the server. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The mezzanine slot is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The mezzanine slot is available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Slot:<i>n</i> Link Speed</b>	This option allows you to restrict the maximum speed of an adapter card installed in PCIe slot <i>n</i> . This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>GEN1</b>—2.5GT/s (gigatransfers per second) is the maximum speed allowed.</li> <li>• <b>GEN2</b>—5GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.</li> <li>• <b>GEN3</b>—8GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.</li> </ul> <p>For example, if you have a 3<sup>rd</sup> generation adapter card in PCIe slot 2 that you want to run at a maximum of 5GT/s instead of the 8GT/s that card supports, set the PCIe Slot 2 Link Speed to <b>GEN2</b>. The system then ignores the card's supported maximum speed of 8GT/s and forces it to run at a maximum of 5 GT/s.</p>

## Server Management BIOS Parameters for C220 and C240 Servers

Name	Description
<b>FRB-2 Timer</b>	<p>Whether the FRB2 timer is used by CIMC to recover the system if it hangs during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is started during POST and used to recover the system if necessary.</li> </ul>
<b>OS Watchdog Timer</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS programs the watchdog timer with a specified timeout value. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The watchdog timer is not used to track how long the server takes to boot.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The watchdog timer tracks how long the server takes to boot. If the server does not boot within the length of time specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout</b> field, the CIMC logs an error and takes the action specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Policy</b> field.</li> </ul>
<b>OS Watchdog Timer Timeout</b>	<p>What timeout value the BIOS uses to configure the watchdog timer. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>5 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 5 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>10 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 10 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>15 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 15 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>20 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 20 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>

Name	Description
OS Watchdog Timer Policy	<p>What action the system takes if the watchdog timer expires. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Do Nothing</b>—The server takes no action if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li><li>• <b>Power Down</b>—The server is powered off if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li><li>• <b>Reset</b>—The server is reset if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li></ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Boot Order Rules</b>	<p>How the server changes the boot order list defined through the CIMC GUI or CLI when there are no devices of a particular device type available or when the user defines a different boot order using the server's BIOS Setup Utility.</p> <p>The supported device types are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HDD</b>—Hard disk drive</li> <li>• <b>FDD</b>—Floppy disk drive</li> <li>• <b>CDROM</b>—Bootable CD-ROM or DVD</li> <li>• <b>PXE</b>—PXE boot</li> <li>• <b>EFI</b>—Extensible Firmware Interface</li> </ul> <p>The Boot Order Rules option can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Strict</b>—When no devices of a particular type are available, the system creates a placeholder for that device type in the boot order list. When a device of that type becomes available, it is added to the boot order in the previously defined position.</li> </ul> <p>If the user defines a boot order through the server's BIOS Setup Utility, that boot order is given priority over the boot order configured through the CIMC GUI or CLI. All device types defined through CIMC that are not present in the boot order defined through the BIOS Setup Utility are removed from the boot order list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Loose</b>—When no devices of a particular type are available, the system removes that device type from the boot order. When a device of that type becomes available, the system adds it to the end of the boot order list.</li> </ul> <p>If the boot order is configured through the server's BIOS Setup Utility, that boot order is given priority over the boot order configured through the CIMC GUI or CLI. All device types defined through CIMC that are not present in the boot order defined through the BIOS Setup Utility are moved to the end of the boot order list.</p>

# C250 Servers

## Main BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers

Name	Description
POST Error Pause	<p>What happens when the server encounters a critical error during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS pauses the attempt to boot the server and opens the Error Manager when a critical error occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS continues to attempt to boot the server.</li> </ul>
Boot Option Retry	<p>Whether the BIOS retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Continually retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Waits for user input before retrying NON-EFI based boot options.</li> </ul>
USB Boot Priority	<p>Whether the BIOS tries to boot from any available USB device before it tries to boot from the server hard drive. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server attempts to boot from a USB device if one is available. In addition, when a USB device is discovered, it is put at the top of its boot category.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server attempts to boot from the server hard drive before it tries USB devices. In addition, when a USB device is discovered, it is put at the bottom of its boot category.</li> </ul>

## Advanced BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers

### Processor Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Intel Turbo Boost Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required.</li> </ul>
<b>Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel Hyper-Threading Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit hyperthreading.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Number of Enabled Cores</b>	<p>Allows you to disable one or more of the physical cores on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b>—Enables all physical cores. This also enables Hyper Threading on the associated logical processor cores.</li> <li>• <b>1 through <i>n</i></b>—Specifies the number of physical processor cores that can run on the server. Each physical core has an associated logical core.</li> </ul> <p>To disable Hyper Threading and have only one logical processor core running on the server, select <b>1</b>.</p> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Execute Disable</b>	<p>Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not classify memory areas.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor classifies memory areas.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel Virtualization Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit virtualization.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.</p>
<b>Intel VT for Directed IO</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not use virtualization technology.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses virtualization technology.</li> </ul>



Name	Description
<b>Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support remapping.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Interrupt Remapping as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Coherency Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support coherency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Address Translation Services</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support ATS.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d PassThrough DMA</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Pass-through DMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support pass-through DMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Pass-through DMA as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Direct Cache Access</b>	<p>Allows processors to increase I/O performance by placing data from I/O devices directly into the processor cache. This setting helps to reduce cache misses. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is not placed directly into the processor cache.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is placed directly into the processor cache.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Processor C3 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C3 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C3 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C3 report.</li> <li>• <b>ACPI C2</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C2 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li> <li>• <b>ACPI C3</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C3 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li> </ul>
<b>Processor C6 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C6 report.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>CPU Performance</b>	<p>Sets the CPU performance profile for the server. The performance profile consists of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data Reuse Optimization</li> <li>• DCU Streamer Prefetcher</li> <li>• DCU IP Prefetcher</li> <li>• Hardware Prefetcher</li> <li>• Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch</li> </ul> <p>This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enterprise</b>—Only the DCU IP Prefetcher is enabled. The rest of the options are disabled.</li> <li>• <b>High Throughput</b>—All options are enabled.</li> <li>• <b>HPC</b>—Data Reuse Optimization is disabled and all other options are enabled. This setting is also known as high performance computing.</li> <li>• <b>Custom</b>—All performance profile options can be configured from the BIOS setup on the server. In addition, the Hardware Prefetcher and Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch options can be configured in the fields below.</li> </ul>
<b>Hardware Prefetcher</b>	<p>Whether the processor allows the Intel hardware prefetcher to fetch streams of data and instruction from memory into the unified second-level cache when necessary. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The hardware prefetcher is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses the hardware prefetcher when cache issues are detected.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b>     <b>CPU Performance</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> in order to specify this value. For any value other than <b>Custom</b>, this option is overridden by the setting in the selected CPU performance profile.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch</b>	<p>Whether the processor fetches cache lines in even/odd pairs instead of fetching just the required line. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor only fetches the required line.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>— The processor fetches both the required line and its paired line.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> <b>CPU Performance</b> must be set to <b>Custom</b> in order to specify this value. For any value other than <b>Custom</b>, this option is overridden by the setting in the selected CPU performance profile.</p>
<b>CPU C State</b>	<p>Whether the system can enter a power savings mode during idle periods. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system remains in high performance state even when idle.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system can reduce power to system components such as the DIMMs and CPUs. The amount of power reduction is specified in the <b>Package C State Limit</b> field.</li> </ul>
<b>C1E</b>	<p>Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>CPU C State</b> is enabled.</p>
<b>Spread Spectrum</b>	<p>Spread Spectrum modulates the pulses produced by the clock on the motherboard in order to reduce the EMI (Electromagnetic Interference) generated by those pulses. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>— The server does not use the spread spectrum function.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>— The server uses the spread spectrum function.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
OEM AESNI	<p>Whether the server uses the AES-NI encryption instruction set that improves on the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithm. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server only uses AES encryption.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server uses AES-NI encryption when possible.</li> </ul>

### Memory Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
Select Memory RAS	<p>How the memory reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) is configured for the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Maximum Performance</b>—System performance is optimized.</li> <li>• <b>Mirroring</b>—System reliability is optimized by using half the system memory as backup.</li> <li>• <b>Sparing</b>—The system reserves some memory for use in the event a DIMM fails. If that happens, the server takes the DIMM offline and replaces it with the reserved memory. This option provides less redundancy than mirroring, but it leaves more of the memory available for programs running on the server.</li> </ul>
NUMA Optimized	<p>Whether the BIOS supports NUMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not support NUMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS includes the ACPI tables that are required for NUMA-aware operating systems. If you enable this option, the system must disable Inter-Socket Memory interleaving on some platforms.</li> </ul>
Low Voltage DDR Mode	<p>Whether the system prioritizes low voltage or high frequency memory operations. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Power Saving Mode</b>—The system prioritizes low voltage memory operations over high frequency memory operations. This mode may lower memory frequency in order to keep the voltage low.</li> <li>• <b>Performance Mode</b>—The system prioritizes high frequency operations over low voltage operations.</li> </ul>

**Serial Port Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Serial A Enable</b>	Whether serial port A is enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port is enabled.</li> </ul>
<b>Serial A Address</b>	If serial port A is enabled, select the hex address that it should use. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>3F8</b></li> <li>• <b>2F8</b></li> <li>• <b>3E8</b></li> <li>• <b>2E8</b></li> </ul>

**USB Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>USB Controller</b>	Whether the processor uses its built-in USB controller. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not use the built-in USB controller.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses the built-in USB controller.</li> </ul>
<b>Make Device Non-Bootable</b>	Whether the server can boot from a USB device. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server can boot from a USB device.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server cannot boot from a USB device.</li> </ul>

## PCI Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Memory Mapped I/O Above 4GB</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable memory mapped I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. Legacy option ROMs are not able to access addresses above 4GB. PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard Gb NIC 1</b>	<p>Whether the first onboard Network Interface Card (NIC) is enabled or disabled on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—NIC 1 is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—NIC 1 is available.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard Gb NIC 2</b>	<p>Whether the second onboard NIC is enabled or disabled on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—NIC 2 is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—NIC 2 is available.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard Gb NIC <i>n</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether the system loads the embedded PXE option ROM for the onboard NIC designated by <i>n</i>. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PXE option ROM is not available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PXE option ROM is available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe OptionROMs</b>	<p>Whether the server can use the PCIe Option ROM expansion slots. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Slot <i>X</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether the PCIe expansion slot designated by <i>X</i> is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>X</i> is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>X</i> is available.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Active Video</b>	<p>How the server displays video. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The server uses an external graphics adapter for display if one is available.</li> <li>• <b>Onboard Device</b>—The server always uses its internal graphics adapter even if an external graphics adapter is available.</li> </ul>

## Server Management BIOS Parameters for C250 Servers

Name	Description
<b>Assert NMI on SERR</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a system error (SERR) occurs. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a SERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a SERR occurs. You must enable this setting if you want to enable <b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a processor bus parity error (PERR) occurs. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a PERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a PERR occurs. You must enable <b>Assert NMI on SERR</b> to use this setting.</li> </ul>
<b>FRB2 Enable</b>	<p>Whether the FRB2 timer is used by CIMC to recover the system if it hangs during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is not used.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The FRB2 timer is started during POST and used to recover the system if necessary.</li> </ul>



Name	Description
<b>PlugNPlay BMC Detection</b>	<p>Whether the system automatically detects the BMC in ACPI-compliant operating systems. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system never automatically detects the BMC.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system automatically detects the BMC whenever possible.</li> </ul>
<b>ACPI1.0 Support</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS publishes the ACPI 1.0 version of FADT in the Root System Description table. This version may be required for compatibility with OS versions that only support ACPI 1.0. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—ACPI 1.0 version is not published.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—ACPI 1.0 version is published.</li> </ul>
<b>Console Redirection</b>	<p>Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the BIOS has booted and the operating system is responsible for the server, console redirection is irrelevant and has no effect. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—No console redirection occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Serial Port A</b>—Enables console redirection on serial port A during POST.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you enable this option, you also disable the display of the Quiet Boot logo screen during POST.</p>
<b>Flow Control</b>	<p>Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>—No flow control is used.</li> <li>• <b>RTS-CTS</b>—RTS/CTS is used for flow control.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Baud Rate</b>	<p>What BAUD rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>9.6k</b>—A 9600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>19.2k</b>—A 19200 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>38.4k</b>—A 38400 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>57.6k</b>—A 57600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>115.2k</b>—A 115200 BAUD rate is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Terminal Type</b>	<p>What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PC-ANSI</b>—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100</b>—A supported vt100 video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100-PLUS</b>—A supported vt100-plus video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT-UTF8</b>—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Legacy OS Redirection</b>	<p>Whether redirection from a legacy operating system, such as DOS, is enabled on the serial port. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is hidden from the legacy operating system.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is visible to the legacy operating system.</li> </ul>

# C260 Servers

## Main BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers

Name	Description
POST Error Pause	<p>What happens when the server encounters a critical error during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS pauses the attempt to boot the server and opens the Error Manager when a critical error occurs during POST.</li><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS continues to attempt to boot the server.</li></ul>
Boot Option Retry	<p>Whether the BIOS retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Continually retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input.</li><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Waits for user input before retrying NON-EFI based boot options.</li></ul>

## Advanced BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers

### Processor Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
Intel Turbo Boost Technology	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically.</li><li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required.</li></ul>

Name	Description
<b>Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel Hyper-Threading Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit hyperthreading.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Number of Enabled Cores</b>	<p>Allows you to disable one or more of the physical cores on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b>—Enables all physical cores. This also enables Hyper Threading on the associated logical processor cores.</li> <li>• <b>1 through <i>n</i></b>—Specifies the number of physical processor cores that can run on the server. Each physical core has an associated logical core.</li> </ul> <p>To disable Hyper Threading and have only one logical processor core running on the server, select <b>1</b>.</p> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Execute Disable</b>	<p>Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not classify memory areas.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor classifies memory areas.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Intel Virtualization Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit virtualization.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.</p>
<b>Intel VT for Directed IO</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not use virtualization technology.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses virtualization technology.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support remapping.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Interrupt Remapping as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Coherency Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support coherency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Intel VT-d Address Translation Services</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support ATS.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d PassThrough DMA</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Pass-through DMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support pass-through DMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Pass-through DMA as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Direct Cache Access</b>	<p>Allows processors to increase I/O performance by placing data from I/O devices directly into the processor cache. This setting helps to reduce cache misses. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is not placed directly into the processor cache.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is placed directly into the processor cache.</li> </ul>
<b>Processor C3 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C3 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C3 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C3 report.</li> <li>• <b>ACPI C2</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C2 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li> <li>• <b>ACPI C3</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C3 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Processor C6 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C6 report.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state.</li> </ul>
<b>Package C State Limit</b>	<p>The amount of power available to the server components when they are idle. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>C0 state</b>—The server provides all server components with full power at all times. This option maintains the highest level of performance and requires the greatest amount of power.</li> <li>• <b>C1 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the system slightly reduces the power consumption. This option requires less power than C0 and allows the server to return quickly to high performance mode.</li> <li>• <b>C3 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C1 option. This requires less power than C1 or C0, but it takes the server slightly longer to return to high performance mode.</li> <li>• <b>C6 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C3 option. This option saves more power than C0, C1, or C3, but there may be performance issues until the server returns to full power.</li> <li>• <b>C7 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the server makes a minimal amount of power available to the components. This option saves the maximum amount of power but it also requires the longest time for the server to return to high performance mode.</li> <li>• <b>No Limit</b>—The server may enter any available C state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>CPU C State</b> is enabled.</p>

Name	Description
<b>CPU C State</b>	<p>Whether the system can enter a power savings mode during idle periods. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system remains in high performance state even when idle.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system can reduce power to system components such as the DIMMs and CPUs. The amount of power reduction is specified in the <b>Package C State Limit</b> field.</li> </ul>
<b>C1E</b>	<p>Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>CPU C State</b> is enabled.</p>

### Memory Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Select Memory RAS</b>	<p>How the memory reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) is configured for the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Maximum Performance</b>—System performance is optimized.</li> <li>• <b>Mirroring</b>—System reliability is optimized by using half the system memory as backup.</li> <li>• <b>Sparing</b>—The system reserves some memory for use in the event a DIMM fails. If that happens, the server takes the DIMM offline and replaces it with the reserved memory. This option provides less redundancy than mirroring, but it leaves more of the memory available for programs running on the server.</li> </ul>



Name	Description
<b>NUMA Optimized</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS supports NUMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not support NUMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS includes the ACPI tables that are required for NUMA-aware operating systems. If you enable this option, the system must disable Inter-Socket Memory interleaving on some platforms.</li> </ul>
<b>Sparing Mode</b>	<p>The sparing mode used by the CIMC. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Rank Sparing</b>—The spared memory is allocated at the rank level.</li> <li>• <b>DIMM Sparing</b>—The spared memory is allocated at the DIMM level.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>Select Memory RAS</b> is set to <b>Sparing</b>.</p>
<b>Mirroring Mode</b>	<p>Mirroring is supported across Integrated Memory Controllers (IMCs) where one memory riser is mirrored with another. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Intersocket</b>—Each IMC is mirrored across two sockets.</li> <li>• <b>Intrasocket</b>—One IMC is mirrored with another IMC in the same socket.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>Select Memory RAS</b> is set to <b>Mirroring</b>.</p>
<b>Patrol Scrub</b>	<p>Whether the system actively searches for, and corrects, single bit memory errors even in unused portions of the memory on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system checks for memory ECC errors only when the CPU reads or writes a memory address.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system periodically reads and writes memory searching for ECC errors. If any errors are found, the system attempts to fix them. This option may correct single bit errors before they become multi-bit errors, but it may adversely affect performance when the patrol scrub is running.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Patrol Scrub Interval</b>	<p>Controls the time interval between each patrol scrub memory access. A lower interval scrubs the memory more often but requires more memory bandwidth.</p> <p>Select a value between 5 and 23. The default value is 8.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>Patrol Scrub</b> is enabled.</p>
<b>CKE Low Policy</b>	<p>Controls the DIMM power savings mode policy. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—DIMMs do not enter power saving mode.</li> <li>• <b>Slow</b>—DIMMs can enter power saving mode, but the requirements are higher. Therefore, DIMMs enter power saving mode less frequently.</li> <li>• <b>Fast</b>—DIMMs enter power saving mode as often as possible.</li> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The BIOS controls when a DIMM enters power saving mode based on the DIMM configuration.</li> </ul>

#### Serial Port Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Serial A Enable</b>	<p>Whether serial port A is enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port is enabled.</li> </ul>

#### USB Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Make Device Non-Bootable</b>	<p>Whether the server can boot from a USB device. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server can boot from a USB device.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server cannot boot from a USB device.</li> </ul>

**PCI Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Memory Mapped I/O Above 4GB</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable memory mapped I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. Legacy option ROMs are not able to access addresses above 4GB. PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard NIC <i>n</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether the system loads the embedded PXE option ROM for the onboard NIC designated by <i>n</i>. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PXE option ROM is not available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PXE option ROM is available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe OptionROMs</b>	<p>Whether the server can use the PCIe Option ROM expansion slots. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Slot <i>n</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether PCIe expansion slot <i>n</i> is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is available.</li> </ul>

## Server Management BIOS Parameters for C260 Servers

Name	Description
<b>Assert NMI on SERR</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a system error (SERR) occurs. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a SERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a SERR occurs. You must enable this setting if you want to enable <b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a processor bus parity error (PERR) occurs. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a PERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a PERR occurs. You must enable <b>Assert NMI on SERR</b> to use this setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Console Redirection</b>	<p>Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the BIOS has booted and the operating system is responsible for the server, console redirection is irrelevant and has no effect. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—No console redirection occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Serial Port A</b>—Enables console redirection on serial port A during POST.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you enable this option, you also disable the display of the Quiet Boot logo screen during POST.</p>
<b>Flow Control</b>	<p>Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>—No flow control is used.</li> <li>• <b>RTS-CTS</b>—RTS/CTS is used for flow control.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Baud Rate</b>	<p>What BAUD rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>9.6k</b>—A 9600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>19.2k</b>—A 19200 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>38.4k</b>—A 38400 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>57.6k</b>—A 57600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>115.2k</b>—A 115200 BAUD rate is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Terminal Type</b>	<p>What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PC-ANSI</b>—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100</b>—A supported vt100 video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100-PLUS</b>—A supported vt100-plus video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT-UTF8</b>—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout</b>	<p>What timeout value the BIOS uses to configure the watchdog timer. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>5 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 5 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>10 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 10 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>15 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 15 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>20 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 20 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>

Name	Description
<b>OS Boot Watchdog Policy</b>	<p>What action the system takes if the watchdog timer expires. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Power Off</b>—The server is powered off if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li> <li>• <b>Reset</b>—The server is reset if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>
<b>Legacy OS Redirection</b>	<p>Whether redirection from a legacy operating system, such as DOS, is enabled on the serial port. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is hidden from the legacy operating system.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is visible to the legacy operating system.</li> </ul>
<b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS programs the watchdog timer with a specified timeout value. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The watchdog timer is not used to track how long the server takes to boot.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The watchdog timer tracks how long the server takes to boot. If the server does not boot within the length of time specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout</b> field, the CIMC logs an error and takes the action specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Policy</b> field.</li> </ul>

## C460 Servers

### Main BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers

Name	Description
<b>POST Error Pause</b>	<p>What happens when the server encounters a critical error during POST. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS pauses the attempt to boot the server and opens the Error Manager when a critical error occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS continues to attempt to boot the server.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Boot Option Retry</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Continually retries NON-EFI based boot options without waiting for user input.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Waits for user input before retrying NON-EFI based boot options.</li> </ul>

## Advanced BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers

### Processor Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Intel Turbo Boost Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required.</li> </ul>
<b>Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>

Name	Description
<b>Intel Hyper-Threading Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit hyperthreading.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Number of Enabled Cores</b>	<p>Allows you to disable one or more of the physical cores on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>All</b>—Enables all physical cores. This also enables Hyper Threading on the associated logical processor cores.</li> <li>• <b>1 through <i>n</i></b>—Specifies the number of physical processor cores that can run on the server. Each physical core has an associated logical core.</li> </ul> <p>To disable Hyper Threading and have only one logical processor core running on the server, select <b>1</b>.</p> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>
<b>Execute Disable</b>	<p>Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not classify memory areas.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor classifies memory areas.</li> </ul> <p>We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.</p>



Name	Description
<b>Intel Virtualization Technology</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not permit virtualization.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.</p>
<b>Intel VT for Directed IO</b>	<p>Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (VT-d). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not use virtualization technology.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses virtualization technology.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Interrupt Remapping. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support remapping.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Interrupt Remapping as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Coherency Support</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support coherency.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d Address Translation Services</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support ATS.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.</li> </ul>
<b>Intel VT-d PassThrough DMA</b>	<p>Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Pass-through DMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The processor does not support pass-through DMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The processor uses VT-d Pass-through DMA as required.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Direct Cache Access</b>	<p>Allows processors to increase I/O performance by placing data from I/O devices directly into the processor cache. This setting helps to reduce cache misses. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is not placed directly into the processor cache.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—Data from I/O devices is placed directly into the processor cache.</li> </ul>
<b>Processor C3 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C3 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C3 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C3 report.</li> <li>• <b>ACPI C2</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C2 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li> <li>• <b>ACPI C3</b>—The BIOS sends the C3 report using the ACPI C3 format, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C3 low power state.</li> </ul>
<b>Processor C6 Report</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not send the C6 report.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Package C State Limit</b>	<p>The amount of power available to the server components when they are idle. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>C0 state</b>—The server provides all server components with full power at all times. This option maintains the highest level of performance and requires the greatest amount of power.</li> <li>• <b>C1 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the system slightly reduces the power consumption. This option requires less power than C0 and allows the server to return quickly to high performance mode.</li> <li>• <b>C3 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C1 option. This requires less power than C1 or C0, but it takes the server slightly longer to return to high performance mode.</li> <li>• <b>C6 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C3 option. This option saves more power than C0, C1, or C3, but there may be performance issues until the server returns to full power.</li> <li>• <b>C7 state</b>—When the CPU is idle, the server makes a minimal amount of power available to the components. This option saves the maximum amount of power but it also requires the longest time for the server to return to high performance mode.</li> <li>• <b>No Limit</b>—The server may enter any available C state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>CPU C State</b> is enabled.</p>
<b>CPU C State</b>	<p>Whether the system can enter a power savings mode during idle periods. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system remains in high performance state even when idle.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system can reduce power to system components such as the DIMMs and CPUs. The amount of power reduction is specified in the <b>Package C State Limit</b> field.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>C1E</b>	<p>Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>CPU C State</b> is enabled.</p>

### Memory Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Select Memory RAS</b>	<p>How the memory reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) is configured for the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Maximum Performance</b>—System performance is optimized.</li> <li>• <b>Mirroring</b>—System reliability is optimized by using half the system memory as backup.</li> <li>• <b>Sparing</b>—The system reserves some memory for use in the event a DIMM fails. If that happens, the server takes the DIMM offline and replaces it with the reserved memory. This option provides less redundancy than mirroring, but it leaves more of the memory available for programs running on the server.</li> </ul>
<b>NUMA Optimized</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS supports NUMA. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not support NUMA.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS includes the ACPI tables that are required for NUMA-aware operating systems. If you enable this option, the system must disable Inter-Socket Memory interleaving on some platforms.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
<b>Sparing Mode</b>	<p>The sparing mode used by the CIMC. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Rank Sparing</b>—The spared memory is allocated at the rank level.</li> <li>• <b>DIMM Sparing</b>—The spared memory is allocated at the DIMM level.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>Select Memory RAS</b> is set to <b>Sparing</b>.</p>
<b>Mirroring Mode</b>	<p>Mirroring is supported across Integrated Memory Controllers (IMCs) where one memory riser is mirrored with another. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Intersocket</b>—Each IMC is mirrored across two sockets.</li> <li>• <b>Intrasocket</b>—One IMC is mirrored with another IMC in the same socket.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>Select Memory RAS</b> is set to <b>Mirroring</b>.</p>
<b>Patrol Scrub</b>	<p>Whether the system actively searches for, and corrects, single bit memory errors even in unused portions of the memory on the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The system checks for memory ECC errors only when the CPU reads or writes a memory address.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The system periodically reads and writes memory searching for ECC errors. If any errors are found, the system attempts to fix them. This option may correct single bit errors before they become multi-bit errors, but it may adversely affect performance when the patrol scrub is running.</li> </ul>
<b>Patrol Scrub Interval</b>	<p>Controls the time interval between each patrol scrub memory access. A lower interval scrubs the memory more often but requires more memory bandwidth.</p> <p>Select a value between 5 and 23. The default value is 8.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This option is used only if <b>Patrol Scrub</b> is enabled.</p>

Name	Description
<b>CKE Low Policy</b>	<p>Controls the DIMM power savings mode policy. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—DIMMs do not enter power saving mode.</li> <li>• <b>Slow</b>—DIMMs can enter power saving mode, but the requirements are higher. Therefore, DIMMs enter power saving mode less frequently.</li> <li>• <b>Fast</b>—DIMMs enter power saving mode as often as possible.</li> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—The BIOS controls when a DIMM enters power saving mode based on the DIMM configuration.</li> </ul>

#### Serial Port Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Serial A Enable</b>	<p>Whether serial port A is enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port is disabled.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port is enabled.</li> </ul>

#### USB Configuration Parameters

Name	Description
<b>Make Device Non-Bootable</b>	<p>Whether the server can boot from a USB device. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server can boot from a USB device.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server cannot boot from a USB device.</li> </ul>

**PCI Configuration Parameters**

Name	Description
<b>Memory Mapped I/O Above 4GB</b>	<p>Whether to enable or disable memory mapped I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. Legacy option ROMs are not able to access addresses above 4GB. PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space.</li> </ul>
<b>Onboard NIC <i>n</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether the system loads the embedded PXE option ROM for the onboard NIC designated by <i>n</i>. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PXE option ROM is not available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PXE option ROM is available for NIC <i>n</i>.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe OptionROMs</b>	<p>Whether the server can use the PCIe Option ROM expansion slots. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—PCIe Option ROMs are available.</li> </ul>
<b>PCIe Slot <i>n</i> ROM</b>	<p>Whether PCIe expansion slot <i>n</i> is available to the server. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is not available.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The expansion slot <i>n</i> is available.</li> </ul>

## Server Management BIOS Parameters for C460 Servers

Name	Description
<b>Assert NMI on SERR</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a system error (SERR) occurs. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a SERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a SERR occurs. You must enable this setting if you want to enable <b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Assert NMI on PERR</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS generates a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and logs an error when a processor bus parity error (PERR) occurs. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The BIOS does not generate an NMI or log an error when a PERR occurs.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The BIOS generates an NMI and logs an error when a PERR occurs. You must enable <b>Assert NMI on SERR</b> to use this setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Console Redirection</b>	<p>Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the BIOS has booted and the operating system is responsible for the server, console redirection is irrelevant and has no effect. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—No console redirection occurs during POST.</li> <li>• <b>Serial Port A</b>—Enables console redirection on serial port A during POST.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you enable this option, you also disable the display of the Quiet Boot logo screen during POST.</p>
<b>Flow Control</b>	<p>Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b>—No flow control is used.</li> <li>• <b>RTS-CTS</b>—RTS/CTS is used for flow control.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>



Name	Description
<b>Baud Rate</b>	<p>What BAUD rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>9.6k</b>—A 9600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>19.2k</b>—A 19200 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>38.4k</b>—A 38400 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>57.6k</b>—A 57600 BAUD rate is used.</li> <li>• <b>115.2k</b>—A 115200 BAUD rate is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>Terminal Type</b>	<p>What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PC-ANSI</b>—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100</b>—A supported vt100 video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT100-PLUS</b>—A supported vt100-plus video terminal and its character set are used.</li> <li>• <b>VT-UTF8</b>—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.</p>
<b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout</b>	<p>What timeout value the BIOS uses to configure the watchdog timer. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>5 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 5 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>10 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 10 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>15 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 15 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> <li>• <b>20 Minutes</b>—The watchdog timer expires 20 minutes after the OS begins to boot.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>

Name	Description
<b>OS Boot Watchdog Policy</b>	<p>What action the system takes if the watchdog timer expires. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Power Off</b>—The server is powered off if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li> <li>• <b>Reset</b>—The server is reset if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.</p>
<b>Legacy OS Redirection</b>	<p>Whether redirection from a legacy operating system, such as DOS, is enabled on the serial port. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is hidden from the legacy operating system.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The serial port enabled for console redirection is visible to the legacy operating system.</li> </ul>
<b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer</b>	<p>Whether the BIOS programs the watchdog timer with a specified timeout value. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b>—The watchdog timer is not used to track how long the server takes to boot.</li> <li>• <b>Enabled</b>—The watchdog timer tracks how long the server takes to boot. If the server does not boot within the length of time specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout</b> field, the CIMC logs an error and takes the action specified in the <b>OS Boot Watchdog Policy</b> field.</li> </ul>



## INDEX

### A

- Active Directory [56, 58](#)
  - configuring [58](#)
- adapter [37, 70, 73, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107](#)
  - activating firmware [107](#)
  - configuring properties [73](#)
  - exporting the configuration [103](#)
  - firmware [105](#)
  - importing the configuration [104](#)
  - installing firmware from local file [105](#)
  - installing firmware from TFTP server [106](#)
  - network [70](#)
  - PCI [37](#)
  - resetting [107](#)
  - restoring default configuration [104](#)
- adapters [69](#)
  - overview [69](#)
- Admin tab [4](#)
- advanced BIOS parameters [156, 171, 183, 199, 211, 223](#)
  - C200 and C210 servers [171](#)
  - C22 and C24 servers [156](#)
  - C220 and C240 servers [183](#)
  - C250 server [199](#)
  - C260 server [211](#)
  - C460 server [223](#)

### B

- backing up [151](#)
  - CIMC configuration [151](#)
- BIOS [134, 137, 139](#)
  - installing firmware through browser [139](#)
  - installing from TFTP server [137](#)
  - obtaining firmware from Cisco [134](#)
- BIOS parameters [155, 156, 167, 170, 171, 180, 183, 195, 198, 199, 208, 211, 220, 222, 223, 232](#)
  - advanced parameters for C200 and C210 [171](#)
  - advanced parameters for C22 and C24 [156](#)
  - advanced parameters for C220 and C240 [183](#)
  - advanced parameters for C250 [199](#)

#### BIOS parameters (*continued*)

- advanced parameters for C260 [211](#)
  - advanced parameters for C460 [223](#)
  - main parameters for C200 and C210 [170](#)
  - main parameters for C22 and C24 [155](#)
  - main parameters for C220 and C240 [183](#)
  - main parameters for C250 [198](#)
  - main parameters for C260 [211](#)
  - main parameters for C460 [222](#)
  - server management parameters for C200 and C210 [180](#)
  - server management parameters for C22 and C24 [167](#)
  - server management parameters for C220 and C240 [195](#)
  - server management parameters for C250 [208](#)
  - server management parameters for C260 [220](#)
  - server management parameters for C460 [232](#)
- #### BIOS settings [16, 26, 28, 29](#)
- advanced [28](#)
  - main [26](#)
  - server boot order [16](#)
  - server management [29](#)
- #### boot order [16, 18](#)
- about [16](#)
  - configuring [16](#)
  - viewing [18](#)
- #### boot table [85, 86](#)
- creating entry [85](#)
  - deleting entry [86](#)
  - description [85](#)

### C

- C200 and C210 servers [170, 171, 180](#)
  - advanced BIOS parameters [171](#)
  - main BIOS parameters [170](#)
  - server management BIOS parameters [180](#)
- C22 and C24 servers [155, 156, 167](#)
  - advanced BIOS parameters [156](#)
  - main BIOS parameters [155](#)
  - server management BIOS parameters [167](#)
- C220 and C240 servers [183, 195](#)
  - advanced BIOS parameters [183](#)

C220 and C240 servers (*continued*)  
     main BIOS parameters [183](#)  
     server management BIOS parameters [195](#)  
 C250 server [198, 199, 208](#)  
     advanced BIOS parameters [199](#)  
     main BIOS parameters [198](#)  
     server management BIOS parameters [208](#)  
 C260 server [211, 220](#)  
     advanced BIOS parameters [211](#)  
     main BIOS parameters [211](#)  
     server management BIOS parameters [220](#)  
 C460 server [222, 223, 232](#)  
     advanced BIOS parameters [223](#)  
     main BIOS parameters [222](#)  
     server management BIOS parameters [232](#)  
 certificate management [119, 122](#)  
     new certificates [119](#)  
     uploading a certificate [122](#)  
 certificates [119](#)  
 CIMC [133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 141, 142, 143, 149, 150](#)  
     clearing log [142](#)  
     configuring log threshold [143](#)  
     firmware [137](#)  
         activating [137](#)  
     firmware overview [133](#)  
     installing firmware from TFTP server [135](#)  
     installing firmware through browser [136](#)  
     obtaining firmware from Cisco [134](#)  
     rebooting [149](#)  
     resetting to factory defaults [150](#)  
     sending log [143](#)  
     viewing log [141](#)  
 CIMC GUI [3, 4](#)  
 CIMC information [32](#)  
 CIMC overview [2](#)  
 common properties [64](#)  
 communication services properties [109, 110, 111, 112](#)  
     HTTP properties [109](#)  
     IPMI over LAN properties [112](#)  
     SSH properties [110](#)  
     XML API properties [111](#)  
 configuration [151, 152](#)  
     backing up [151](#)  
     exporting [151](#)  
     importing [152](#)  
 CPU properties [33](#)  
 current sensors [45](#)

## D

disabling KVM [53](#)

## E

enabling KVM [52, 53](#)  
 encrypting virtual media [50](#)  
 event filters, platform [125, 126](#)  
     about [125](#)  
     configuring [126](#)  
 event log, system [145](#)  
     clearing [145](#)  
     viewing [145](#)  
 events [125, 126](#)  
     platform [125, 126](#)  
         disabling alerts [126](#)  
         enabling alerts [125](#)  
 exporting [151](#)  
     CIMC configuration [151](#)

## F

fan sensors [42](#)  
 fault summary [39](#)  
     viewing [39](#)  
 faults [39](#)  
     viewing summary [39](#)  
 FEX [99](#)  
     description [99](#)  
     viewing properties [99](#)  
 FIP mode [73](#)  
 firmware [133, 134, 135, 136, 137](#)  
     about [133](#)  
     activating [137](#)  
     installing from TFTP server [135](#)  
     installing through browser [136](#)  
     obtaining from Cisco [134](#)  
 Flexible Flash [23, 24, 25, 26](#)  
     booting from [25](#)  
     configuring properties [24](#)  
     description [23](#)  
     resetting [26](#)  
 floppy disk emulation [50](#)

## H

hard drive locator LED [16](#)  
 HTTP properties [109](#)

## I

importing [152](#)  
     CIMC configuration [152](#)

IP blocking [66](#)  
 IPMI over LAN [112](#)  
     configuring [112](#)  
     description [112](#)  
 IPv4 properties [64](#)

## K

KVM [52, 53](#)  
     configuring [52](#)  
     disabling [53](#)  
     enabling [52, 53](#)  
 KVM console [9, 51](#)

## L

LED sensors [46](#)  
 local users [55](#)  
 locator LED [15, 16](#)  
     hard drive [16](#)  
     server [15](#)  
 logging in [6](#)  
 logging out [7](#)

## M

main BIOS parameters [155, 170, 183, 198, 211, 222](#)  
     C200 and C210 servers [170](#)  
     C22 and C24 servers [155](#)  
     C220 and C240 servers [183](#)  
     C250 server [198](#)  
     C260 server [211](#)  
     C460 server [222](#)  
 memory properties [33](#)

## N

Navigation pane [4](#)  
 network adapter [70](#)  
     viewing properties [70](#)  
 network properties [62, 64, 65, 66](#)  
     common properties [64](#)  
     IPv4 properties [64](#)  
     NIC properties [62](#)  
     port profile properties [66](#)  
     VLAN properties [65](#)  
 network security [67](#)  
 NIC properties [62](#)

## O

operating system installation [10](#)  
 OS installation [9, 10, 11](#)  
     KVM console [10](#)  
     methods [9](#)  
     PXE [11](#)

## P

PCI adapter [37](#)  
     viewing properties [37](#)  
 persistent binding [86, 87, 88](#)  
     clearing [88](#)  
     description [86](#)  
     rebuilding [88](#)  
     viewing [87](#)  
 platform event filters [125, 126](#)  
     about [125](#)  
     configuring [126](#)  
 platform events [125, 126, 129](#)  
     disabling alerts [126](#)  
     enabling alerts [125](#)  
     interpreting traps [129](#)  
 port profile properties [66](#)  
 power capping policy [21](#)  
     about [21](#)  
     configuring [21](#)  
 power cycling the server [20](#)  
 power restore policy [22](#)  
     configuring [22](#)  
 power statistics [21](#)  
     viewing [21](#)  
 power supply properties [35](#)  
 power supply sensors [40](#)  
 powering off the server [20](#)  
 powering on the server [19](#)  
 PXE installation [11](#)

## R

recovering from a corrupted bios [150](#)  
 remote presence [49, 50, 52, 53](#)  
     serial over LAN [49](#)  
     virtual KVM [52, 53](#)  
     virtual media [50](#)  
 resetting adapter [107](#)  
 resetting the server [18](#)

## S

- self-signed certificate [120](#)
- sensors [40, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46](#)
  - current [45](#)
  - fan [42](#)
  - LED [46](#)
  - power supply [40](#)
  - storage [46](#)
  - temperature [43](#)
  - voltage [44](#)
- serial over LAN [49](#)
- server health [13](#)
- server management [13, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20](#)
  - hard drive locator LED [16](#)
  - power cycling the server [20](#)
  - powering off the server [20](#)
  - powering on the server [19](#)
  - resetting the server [18](#)
  - server boot order [16](#)
  - server health [13](#)
  - server locator LED [15](#)
  - shutting down the server [19](#)
- server management BIOS parameters [167, 180, 195, 208, 220, 232](#)
  - C200 and C210 servers [180](#)
  - C22 and C24 servers [167](#)
  - C220 and C240 servers [195](#)
  - C250 server [208](#)
  - C260 server [220](#)
  - C460 server [232](#)
- server NICs [61](#)
- server overview [1](#)
- server properties [31](#)
- server software [1](#)
- Server tab [4](#)
- shutting down the server [19](#)
- SNMP [113, 114, 116, 117, 127, 128](#)
  - configuring properties [113](#)
  - configuring SNMPv3 users [117](#)
  - configuring trap settings [114, 127](#)
  - managing SNMPv3 users [116](#)
  - sending test message [116, 128](#)
- SSH properties [110](#)
- storage properties [36](#)
  - viewing [36](#)
- storage sensors [46](#)
- syslog [143](#)
  - sending CIMC log [143](#)
- system event log [145](#)
  - clearing [145](#)
  - viewing [145](#)

## T

- technical support data [147, 148](#)
  - downloading to local file [148](#)
  - exporting to TFTP [147](#)
- temperature sensors [43](#)
- toolbar [6](#)

## U

- uploading a server certificate [122](#)
- user management [55, 58, 60](#)
  - Active Directory [58](#)
  - local users [55](#)
  - user sessions [60](#)
- user sessions [60](#)

## V

- vHBA [75, 79, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88](#)
  - boot table [85](#)
  - clearing persistent binding [88](#)
  - creating [84](#)
  - creating boot table entry [85](#)
  - deleting [85](#)
  - deleting boot table entry [86](#)
  - guidelines for managing [75](#)
  - modifying properties [79](#)
  - persistent binding [86](#)
  - rebuilding persistent binding [88](#)
  - viewing persistent binding [87](#)
  - viewing properties [75](#)
- virtual KVM [52, 53](#)
- virtual media [50](#)
- VLAN properties [65](#)
- VM FEX [99](#)
  - description [99](#)
  - viewing properties [99](#)
- vNIC [88, 89, 93, 98, 99](#)
  - creating [98](#)
  - deleting [99](#)
  - guidelines for managing [88](#)
  - modifying properties [93](#)
  - viewing properties [89](#)
- voltage sensors [44](#)

## W

- Work pane [4](#)

**X**

XML API [111](#)

XML API (*continued*)

description [111](#)

XML API properties [111](#)

